

# Connect

الصف السادس الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول

Prepared by: Senior English Teachers

6

100% إجابات

نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF



ذاكر  
مذكر



# Contents



## Theme

### 1 I discover myself

23

Unit 1: Green cities

24

Unit 2: We are all different

59

Unit 3: Vacation plans

96

## Theme

### 2 Myself and others

131

Unit 4: Celebrate good times

132

Unit 5: Amazing journeys

168

Unit 6: Taking care

203

Tape scripts

239

Writing Answers

244

Student's book "Listening scripts"

251





## Revision on Language

### The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التي نقوم بها كل يوم.

#### Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة:

(I, We, You, They, اسم جمع) + (inf.) + مصدر الفعل

(He, She, It, اسم مفرد) + (inf.) + (s/es/ies) ...



I **walk** to school every day.

أنا أمشي إلى المدرسة كل يوم.



He **does** karate on Fridays.

هو يلعب الكاراتيه في أيام الجمعة.



s



e.g. She **wakes** up early in the morning.

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

es



e.g. Dad **watches** TV every night.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss, sh, ch, o, x) يضاف لها (es):

ies



e.g. My cousin **flies** to Paris every year.

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف الـ (y) ويضاف للفعل (ies):

#### Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:

(I, We, You, They, اسم جمع) + **don't** + (inf.) + مصدر الفعل

(He, She, It, اسم مفرد) + **doesn't** + (inf.) + مصدر الفعل



I **don't eat** unhealthy food.

أنا لا أكل الطعام غير الصحي.



She **doesn't play** basketball.

هي لا تلعب كرة السلة.

## Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال

Do

I / you / we / they / اسم جمع

Does

he / she / it / اسم مفرد

+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل ؟

Answer الإجابة

Yes,

No,

subject (الفاعل)

do / does.

don't / doesn't.

A: Do you have plants in your balcony?

هل يوجد نباتات في شرفتك؟

B: Yes, I do.

نعم.



## Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question word  
كلمة الاستفهام

do

I / you / we / they / اسم جمع

does

he / she / it / اسم مفرد

+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل ؟

A: What does he wear?

ماذا يرتدى؟

B: He wears a galabeya.

هو يرتدى جلابية.





## The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express actions that started and ended in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

### Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة:

Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل

#### 1. Regular Verbs

أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed):

walk/walked

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها

(d) فقط:

move/moved

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) يضاف لها

(ied) ويحذف الـ (y):  
carry / carried

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك +

حرف ساكن يضاف لها (ed) مع

مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:  
clap / clapped



She **baked** a birthday cake yesterday.

هي قامت بخبز تورتة (كيك) عيد ميلاد بالأمس.

#### 2. Irregular Verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
see	saw	come	came	have/has	had
go	went	get	got	write	wrote
take	took	sleep	slept	drink	drank
catch	caught	do	did	break	broke

### Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:

Subject + **didn't** + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

She **didn't** play video games last night.

هي لم تلعب ألعاب الفيديو الليلة الماضية.



(Verb to be)

في زمن الماضي

I/He/She/It/اسم مفرد + **was/wasn't** ...

She **was** on a boat trip last week.

كانت هي في رحلة قارب الأسبوع الماضي.

We/They/You/اسم جمع + **were/weren't** ...

My friends **were** in the garden this afternoon.

كان أصدقائي في الحديقة هذه الظهيرة.

## Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

A: Did + subject + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ..... ?

B: Yes,

B: No,

subject

did.

didn't.



A: Did you do your homework?

هل قمت بعمل واجبك المنزلي؟

B: Yes, I did.

نعم.



A: Did she have an ice cream?

هل تناولت آيس كريم؟

B: No, she didn't.

لا.

## Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Question word

did

subject

(inf.) ..... ?

B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل ...



A: When did you visit Paris?

متى قمت بزيارة باريس؟

B: I visited Paris last December.

قمت بزيارة باريس في شهر ديسمبر الماضي.

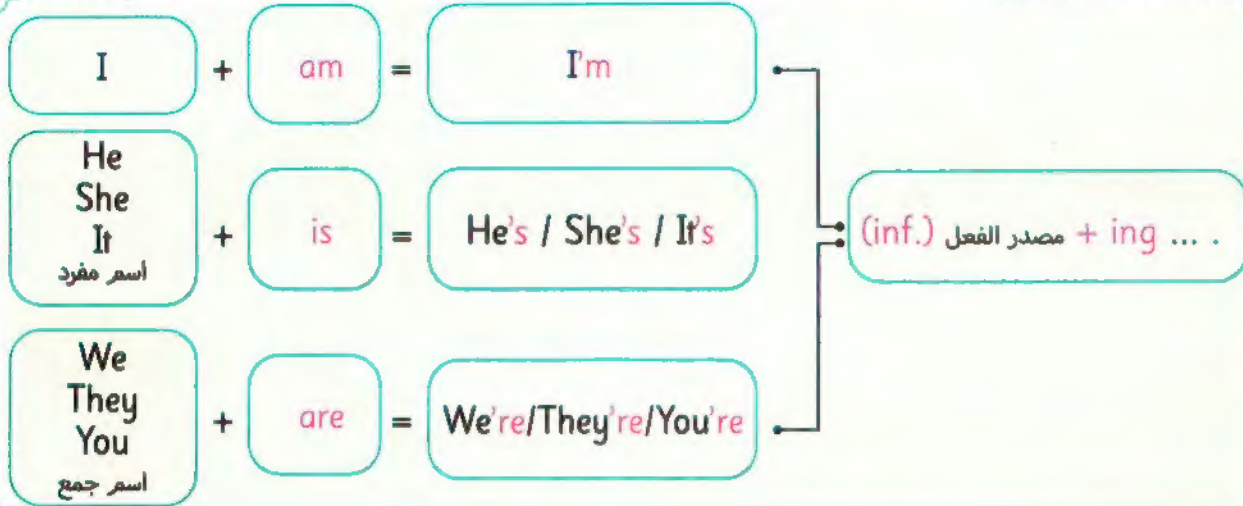


## The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous tense to express an action which is happening right now.

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن.

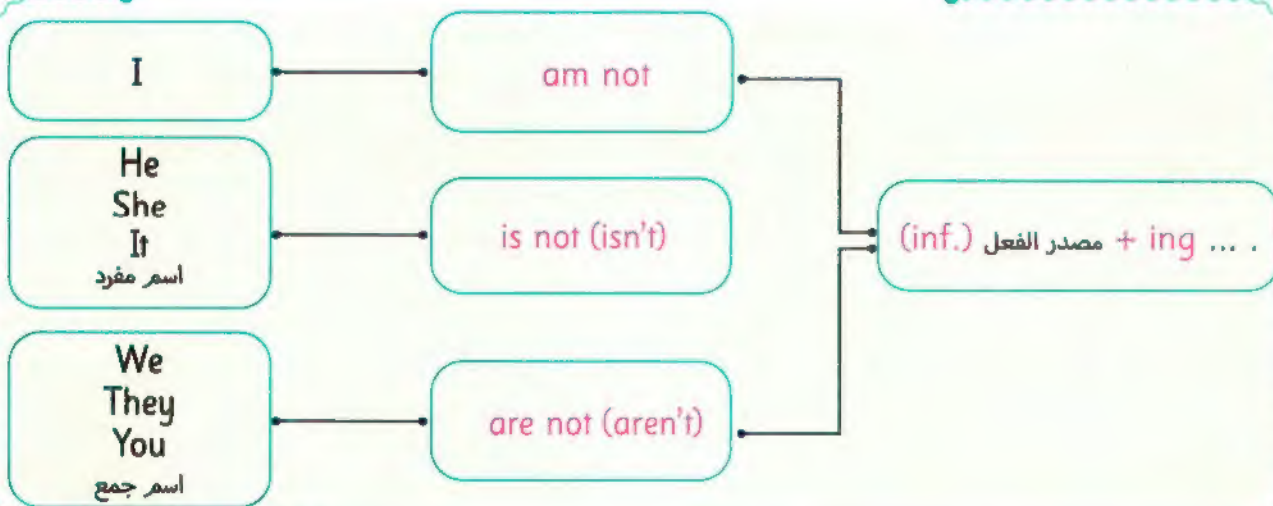
### Affirmative sentence: الجملة المثبتة:



I am reading a book now.

أنا أقرأ كتابًا الآن.

### Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:



He isn't eating lunch at the moment.

هو لا يأكل طعام الغداء في هذه اللحظة.

## السؤال ب (هل): Yes/No question:

السؤال Question	Is	اسم مفرد / he / she / it	+ ing ...? + مصدر الفعل (inf.)
	Are	اسم جمع / you / we / they	

الإجابة Answer	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	am / is / are. am not / isn't / aren't.
	No,		

A: Is she wearing a blue dress?

هل ترتدي هي فستاناً أزرق؟

B: Yes, she is.

نعم.



## السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام: Wh- question:

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	am/ is/ are	subject (الفاعل)	+ ing ? + مصدر الفعل (inf.)
---------------------------------	-------------	------------------	-----------------------------

A: What are you doing?

ماذا تفعل؟

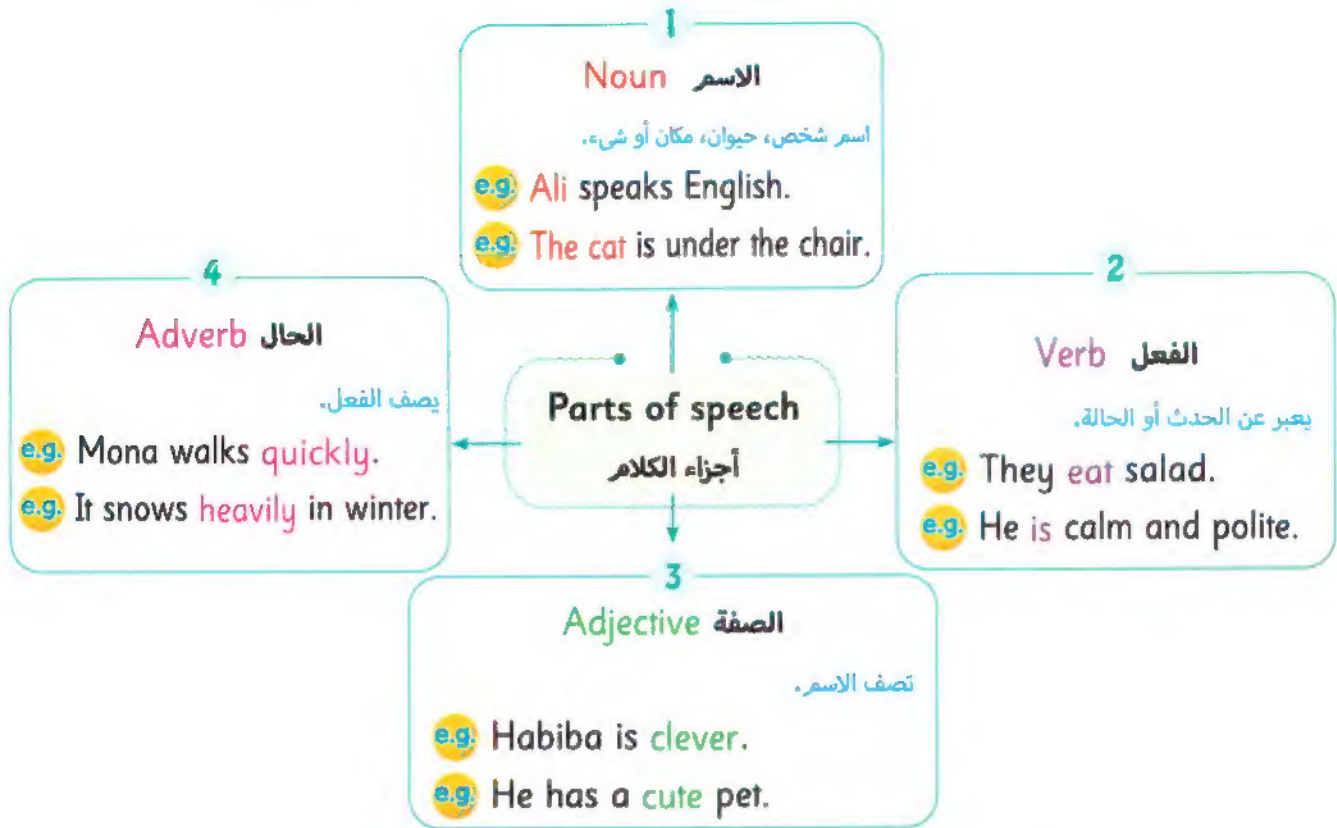
B: I'm playing football.

ألعب كرة قدم.





## How to form a sentence: كيفية تكوين جملة:



## Sentence formation تكوين الجملة

Subject

+

Verb

+

Object

e.g.

I eat healthy food.



The children draw pictures.



Heba is making a cake.



We played tennis after school.



## Wh- questions ادوات الاستفهام

What ...? (ماذا (للسؤال عن ماهية الشيء) ما / ماذا



A: What is this?

B: This is my bike.

Where ...? (أين (للسؤال عن المكان) أين



A: Where is the cat?

B: It is on the couch.

When ...? (متى (للسؤال عن الوقت) متى



A: When do you eat breakfast?

B: I eat breakfast at seven o'clock am.

Who ...? (من (للسؤال عن العاقل) من



A: Who is he?

B: He is my grandfather.

Whose ...? (لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية) لمن



A: Whose book is this?

B: This is my book. / This book is mine.

Which ...? (أي (للتخيار) أي



A: Which toy do you want?

B: I want the yellow car.





How ...?

كيف

A: How do you go to school?

B: I go to school by bus.



How many ...? (العدد عن العدد)

A: How many hats are there?

B: There are six hats.



How old ...? (العمر (للسؤال عن العمر)

A: How old is he?

B: He's seven years old.



How much ...? (الكمية (للسؤال عن الثمن / الكمية)

A: How much is the watch?

B: It's fifty pounds.



How long ...? (كم طول العدة)

A: How long do you study English?

B: We study English for two hours every day.



Why ...?

لماذا (للسؤال عن السبب)

A: Why can't you play football?

B: I can't play football because I hurt my leg.

## Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

A

Capital letters

الحروف الكبيرة

فى بداية الجملة (الخبرية/ الأمرية)/ السؤال / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / الضمير (ا) فى أى مكان بالجملة / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة.

e.g.

1. Hana is from England.
2. I live in Cairo, Egypt.
3. Lara studies Chinese on Mondays.
4. He went to Alexandria in August.

.

Period (Full stop)

النقطة

e.g. I don't go to school on Fridays.

فى نهاية الجملة.

?

Question mark

علامة الاستفهام

e.g. When are they coming?

فى نهاية السؤال.

!

Exclamation mark

علامة التعجب

e.g.

نضع علامة التعجب (!) فى نهاية العبارات أو الحمل التى تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب أو الشعور القوى.  
Hi! / Wow! / I feel excited!

'

Apostrophe

الفاصلة العليا

e.g.

1. Noura's dad is a doctor.
2. He's a tennis player.

توضع قبل «s» الملكية.

توضع فى الاختصارات.

&

Conjunction

الفاصلة السفلى

e.g.

1. I'm good at drawing, painting, and singing.
2. No, she didn't.
3. He likes reading but he doesn't like writing.
4. Would you like some juice, Ola?
5. Can you open the window, please?

نستخدم الفاصلة عندما نكتب قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

تستخدم بعد Yes / No فى الإجابات.

نستخدم قبل but.

تستخدم قبل الأسماء/ please إذا جاءت فى نهاية الجملة.



## How to Answer comprehension questions

**Read the text and answer the questions:**

My name is Hany. I like traveling to new places. Last week, I traveled to America with my family. It is a very big country. We traveled by plane because I like traveling by planes. We stayed in a big hotel. Our room was on the 18<sup>th</sup> floor. In America, you can see a lot of interesting things. There are lots of high-rise buildings. There are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.

**Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1** The main idea of the text is about ..... 
- a) Hany's job                      b) Hany's favorite sport  
c) Hany's trip to America      d) Hany's hobby

مذكورة في أول سطر من الفقرة.

- 2 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .....
- a) Hany's family                      b) America
- c) Egypt                                d) plane

للإحاطة على مضمون الأثر، فقد تم إجراء مقابلة مع الكاتب في شهر كانون الأول من سنة ٢٠١٧م، حيث تمت المقابلة مع الكاتب في مقره الخاص به في مدينة الرياض، وقد تمت المقابلة في يوم الاثنين الموافق ١٥ من شهر كانون الأول من سنة ٢٠١٧م.

هذا الضمير يشير إلى عاقل أم غير عاقل، ثم قراءة الاختبارات جيدًا لتحدد الإحاطة.

**Answer the following questions:**

- ### 3 Why did Hany travel by plane?

Hany traveled by plane because he likes traveling by planes

[illegible]

- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

Last week, Hany traveled to America by plane. America is a big country and there are lots of things you can see there.

[illegible]

## 1 Read the text and answer the questions:

The zoo is the best place to visit at the weekend. It is a safe place where many kinds of animals and birds live. The people who work there take care of the animals and birds; they give them food and drink. One visit to the zoo makes you love wildlife. Children love going to the zoo because it is a place to play and have fun. It is also a place where you can see some kinds of animals that you can't see at any other place.

### Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about .....  
a) weekend                      b) the zoo                      c) animals                      d) birds
- 2 Many kinds of ..... live in the zoo.  
a) people                      b) animals                      c) children                      d) tourists

### Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is the best place to visit at the weekend?  
.....
- 4 Why do children love the zoo?  
.....

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions:

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim with my family. The festival is for the start of spring, and it's a very old celebration. The ancient Egyptians celebrated it too. Sham El-Nessim is always on the same day as Coptic Easter Monday. In Sham El-Nessim, the weather is usually nice, so we go to the park and eat lots of nice food. We also paint and decorate eggs to make them look beautiful. We always have fun at Sham El-Nessim.

### Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about .....  
a) celebrating Eid                      b) the Month of Ramadan  
c) celebrating Christmas                      d) celebrating Sham El-Nessim
- 2 The underlined word "start" means the .....  
a) last                      b) beginning                      c) final                      d) end

### Answer the following questions:

- 3 How is the weather in Sham El-Nessim?  
.....
- 4 What do we do on Sham El-Nessim?  
.....



# Writing Tips

Leave a small space before the first sentence.

اترك مسافة صغيرة قبل أول جملة.

Write 50–60 words on the given topic.

اكتب 50–60 كلمة عن الموضوع المَعطى.

Write one idea for each sentence.

اكتب فكرة واحدة لكل جملة.

Make your sentences simple and short.

اجعل جملك بسيطة وقصيرة.

Start each sentence with a capital letter and end it with a full stop.

ابدأ كل جملة بحرف كبير (capital letter) وضع نقطة في النهاية.

Use the appropriate tense according to the topic.

استخدم الزمن المناسب طبقاً للموضوع.

Use vocabulary that is related to the topic.

استخدم مفردات ذات صلة بالموضوع.

Re-read your paragraph to check for grammar, spelling and punctuation.

أعد قراءة فقرتك وتأكد من صحة القواعد وعدم وجود أخطاء إملائية. ومن استخدام علامات الترقيم

صحيحة

Make sure your handwriting is neat and clear.

تأكد من أن كتابتك مرتبة وواضحة.

 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

### “My new apartment”

more modern – bigger television

I moved into a new apartment with my family. The new kitchen is bigger and the oven is more modern. There is more space in the living room, so we can have a bigger television. We have three bedrooms now. There are two bathrooms and a fantastic balcony.

### It's your turn

 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

### “Alexandria”

- Why do you love Alexandria?
- What can you do there?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## How to write an email

البريد الإلكتروني

<b>From :</b>	البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالمرسل
<b>To :</b>	البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالمرسل إليه
<b>Subject :</b>	عنوان الموضوع

اسم المرسل إليه  
**Dear**

- I'm happy to write this email to you.
- How are you and your family?
- I miss you very much.

**Greeting**  
حملة افتتاحية

**Body**  
الموضوع

- With my best wishes.
- See you soon.
- Write to me soon.
- Hope to hear from you soon!

مع أطيب الأمنيات.  
أراك قريباً.  
اكتب لي قريباً.  
اتمنى ان اسمع منك قريباً

**Conclusion**  
جملة ختامية

التوقيع  
(اسم الراسل)



Write an email of about 50-60 words to your friend in Egypt telling him about your favorite animal.

<b>From :</b>	hany@student.com.
<b>To :</b>	ali@student.com.
<b>Subject :</b>	An unusual animal

Dear Ali,

I'm happy to write this email to you. This week, we're talking about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. I think my favorite unusual animal is the panda. Pandas live in forests high in the mountains. They eat bamboo. They are black and white. Pandas can adapt to their environment, which is cold and snowy.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Hany

## How to write a blog

كيف تكتب مدونة

Write a blog post of about 50-60 words using the following guiding elements:

"Ancient Egyptian homes"

reed mats – storing crops

اسم كاتب المدونة

تاريخ كتابة المدونة

موضوع المدونة

**Dalida** BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

**Wednesday, 8<sup>th</sup> November**

**Ancient Egyptian homes**

The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today. There were reed mats to sit and sleep on. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

What do you think of it? Do you like it?

خاتمة المدونة

## It's your turn

Write a blog post of about 50-60 words using the following guiding elements:

"Unusual homes"

- Where is it?
- Why is it unusual?

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Theme 1

I discover myself

أنا أكتشف نفسي



# Unit

1

# Green cities

مدن خضراء

## Unit Overview

Student's Book  
Exercises



Practice  
More



Answers  
100%



• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- listen, read, write, and research about green spaces in towns.
- talk about how often he/she does things.
- listen and read about a project to make a city greener.
- say the sounds "th" and "s".
- write an informal email about things he/she misses about Egypt.

• نهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادراً على أن:

- يسمع ويفهم ويكتب ويبحث عن المساحات الخضراء في المدن.
- يتحدث عن عدد المرات التي يقوم/تقوم فيها بالأشياء.
- يسمع ويفهم عن مشروع لجعل المدينة أكثر خضرة.
- يقول الأصوات "th" و "s".

• research and make an infographic about his/her area.

• يكتب بريداً إلكترونيًا غير رسمي عن الأشياء التي يفقدونها/تفتقدونها في مصر.

• يبحث ويقوم بعمل مخطط حول منطقته.

### Did you know?

- **\* Urban greening** is an important part of town planning in many countries. It means creating areas of plants and trees in cities. These can be small parks between buildings or gardens on people's roofs.

### I can find it out!

- Al-Azhar Park is a **\* public** park located in Historic Cairo, Egypt. This park is **\* listed as** one of the world's sixty great public spaces by the Project for Public Spaces.

\* Urban greening

تخضير المناطق الحضرية

\* public

عامر

\* listed as

مدرجة ضمن





**We work in the community garden**

نحن نعمل في الحديقة المجتمعية



Listen, point, and say:

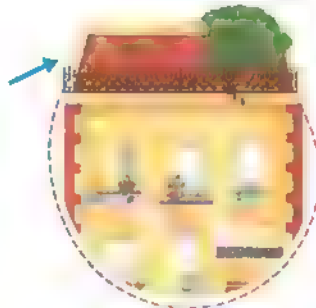
استمع، أشر وقل:

### Main vocabulary



apartment block

مبنى سكني



roof

سطح



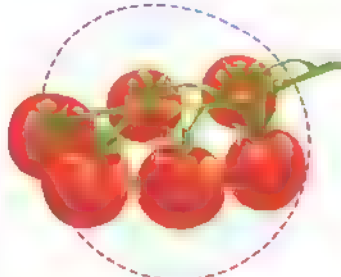
natural fertilizer

سماد طبيعي



chemicals

مواد كيميائية



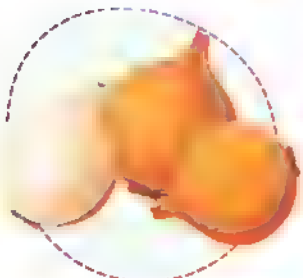
tomatoes

طماطم



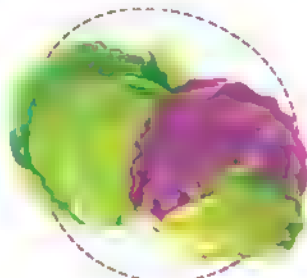
peppers

فلفل



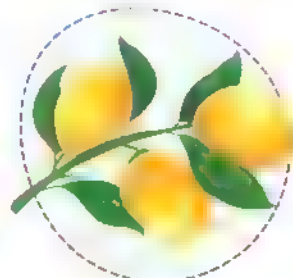
onions

بصل



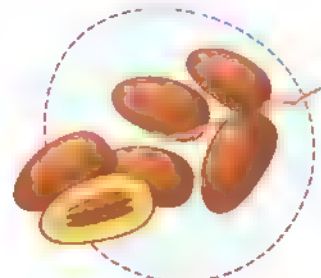
lettuce

خس



lemons

ليمون



dates

بلح (تمر)



**Let's say it right!**

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ch) في كلمة (chemicals) و (school) ينطقان (ك) (k).

• لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (gh) في كلمة (neighborhood) حروف صامتة (silent) لا تنطق.

## Extra vocabulary

community	مجتمع	space	مساحة
volunteer	متطوع	neighborhood	حي (مكان)
market	سوق	own	خاص
fresh (adj.)	طازج	organic (adj.)	عصوي
square meter	متر مربع	a year	سنويًا
health	صحة	summary	ملخص
local area	منطقة محلية	balcony	بلكونة

## Conjugation of verbs - تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs		أفعال منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
plant	يُزرع	use	يستخدم
produce	يُنتج	harvest	يُحصَد
clean	يُنظف	mention	يُذكر
Irregular verbs		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
grow	يُزرع	sell	يُباع
mean	يعني / يقصد	think	يعتقد

## Expressions and Phrases

on Fridays	في أيام الجمعة	on Friday afternoons	في أوقات الظهيرة يوم الجمعة
that's interesting	هذا رائع	all the times	كل الأوقات
in the middle of ...	في منتصف ...	Wow!	رائع!
which means	مما يعني	that's not all	ليس هذا كل شيء
make friends	يُكوّن صداقات	sounds great	يبدو رائعًا

## Check point

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- When plants are ready, we (clean – produce – harvest – plant) them.
  - (Onion – Lettuce – Date – Lemon) is a green plant with a lot of leaves.
  - We live in a/an (roof – garden – apartment block – street) of eleven floors.
  - We never use (chemicals – fertilizers – plants – water) to grow our food.
- Our food is organic.





Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ ونبادل الأدوار:



Nour

No school tomorrow! Do you want to come to my house?

لا يوجد مدرسة غدًا! هل تريد أن تأتي إلى منزلي؟

Mariam



Thanks Nour, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.

شكرًا يا نور، لكنني دائمًا أساعد عمتي بعد ظهر يوم الجمعة في الحديقة المجتمعية.



Nour

The community garden? What's that?

الحديقة المجتمعية؟ ما هذا؟



Mariam



It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. We grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes we sell them in the market, too!

إنها مساحة خضراء كبيرة على سطح عمارة عمتي سلمى. الأشخاص الذين يعملون هناك جميعهم متطوعون من حيي حرجة، بصري، وكلي. وحيات سورها في سوق البص.



Nour

That's interesting. What things do you grow?

هذا ممتع. ما الأشياء التي تزرعونها؟

Mariam



Well, we usually plant tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. Sometimes we also plant fruit trees. This year we have lemons and dates.

حسنًا، عادة نزرع الطماطم والفلفل والبصل والخس - الأشياء التي يأكلها الناس طوال الوقت. في بعض الأحيان نزرع أيضًا أشجار المأكهة. هذا العام لدينا الليمون والتمر.





Nour

And you grow all this food in the middle of the city. Wow!

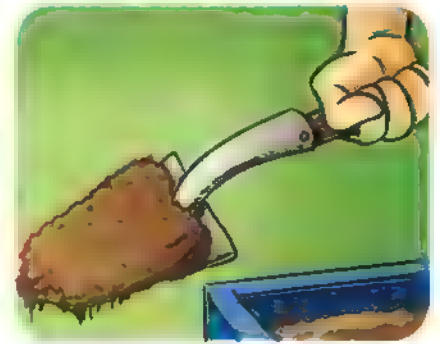
وأنتم تزرعون كل هذا الطعام في وسط المدينة. رائع!

Mariam



Yes, it means people can grow their own fresh food and it's organic, too, which means we only use natural fertilizer – we never use chemicals.

نعم، هذا يعني أن بإمكان الناس زراعة طعامهم الطازج وهو عضوي أيضاً، مما يعني أننا نستخدم الأسمدة الطبيعية فقط - لا نستخدم المواد الكيميائية أبداً.



Nour

Does your garden produce a lot of vegetables?

هل تنتج حديقتك الكثير من الخضار؟

Mariam



Yes, it does. From just one square meter of roof garden, we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year. And that's not all. Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, which is good for people's health. And they're a great place to meet people and make friends.

نعم إنها كذلك. يمكننا حصاد عشرين كيلو جراماً من الخضار سنوياً من مساحة متر مربع واحد فقط من الحدائق الموجودة على السطح. وهذا ليس كل شيء. تساعد حدائق الأسطح أيضاً في تنقية الهواء في المدينة، وهذا مفيد لصحة الناس. وهو مكان رائع للقاء الناس وتكوين صداقات.



Nour

It sounds great, Mariam. We need more community roof gardens like that in our city!

هذا يبدو رائعاً يا مريم. نحن بحاجة إلى المزيد من حدائق الأسطح المجتمعية مثل تلك الموجودة في مدينتنا!

### Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (on) قبل أيام الأسبوع.

e.g. I help my mom on Friday/Friday afternoons.

- بعض الكلمات من الممكن أن تستخدم كـ noun/verb :

Noun اسم	Verb فعل
plant نبات	plant يزرع
e.g. The plants are green.	e.g. We usually plant tomatoes and onions.
harvest محصول	harvest يحصد
e.g. We had a good harvest this year.	e.g. We can harvest 20 kilos of vegetables a year.



### 1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

- 1 A ..... garden is a big green space on the roof of an apartment block.
- 2 The people who work there are all ..... from the neighborhood.
- 3 Roof gardens also help clean the ..... in the city.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

**A**

- 1 Sometimes we plant fruit trees.
- 2 When the food is organic, ...
- 3 Roof gardens help clean the air, ...
- 4 Roof gardens are a great...

**B**

- a. ( ) which is good for people's health.
- b. ( ) to sell our fruits.
- c. ( ) This year we have lemons and dates.
- d. ( ) that means we use only natural fertilizer.
- e. ( ) place to meet people and make friends.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Nour asks Mariam to go to her house tomorrow, but Mariam goes to help her aunt on Fridays. They work in a community garden on the roof of an apartment block. They grow vegetables and fruit for people in the local area, and sometimes they sell them, too. Mariam thinks the community garden is a good idea because the plants also help to clean the air in the city, and it is a good place to make new friends. She thinks that we need more community roof gardens in our city.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 Mariam goes to help her aunt on .....  
 a) Saturdays      b) Sundays      c) Fridays      d) Mondays
- 2 The underlined word "grow" means .....  
 a) harvest      b) plant      c) water      d) clean



### Answer the following questions:

3 Where is the community garden?

.....

4 Why is the community garden a good idea?

.....

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1 Mariam – Where – Fridays – on – go – does?

.....

2 the – always – I – garden – community – at – help.

.....

3 come – you – to – house – my – Do – want to?

.....

4 kilos of – a year – We – harvest – vegetables – can – twenty.

.....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

we work in the community garden

.....

6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 50–60 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجال  
أخر الكتاب

### “Our community garden”

What is the community garden? – What do you grow there?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



**We always work hard**

نحن دائماً نعمل بجد



**Listen and say:**

**استمع وقل:**

### Main vocabulary

logo	شعار (علامة مميزة للدعاية)	mini (adj.)	مصغر	forest	غابة
organization	منظمة	nature	الطبيعة	effects	تأثيرات

### Extra vocabulary

aid	مساعدة	urban (adj.)	حضرى	location	موقع
foreign (adj.)	أجنبي	project	مشروع	naturally	طبيعياً
carefully	بحرص	communities	مجتمعات	data	بيانات
climate	مناخ	volunteers	متطوعون	link	رابط
normally	بشكل طبيعى	information	معلومات	research	بحث
city center	وسط المدينة	gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز	competition	مسابقة
region	منطقة				

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present		Past
join	ينضم	joined
click	ينقر	clicked
relax	يستريح	relaxed

#### Irregular verbs

Present		Past
become	يصبح	became

#### أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
collect	يجمع	collected
offer	يعرض	offered
miss	يفوت	missed

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
understand	يفهم	understood

### Expressions and Phrases

over time	مع مرور الوقت	a few times a month	عدة مرات في الشهر
go cycling	يذهب لركوب الدراجات	angry with someone	غاصب من + (شخص)



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

الصفحة الرئيسية

معلومات عن الصفحة

انضم إلينا

أحدث الأخبار

تواصل معنا

Home

About

Join us

Latest News

Contact us



## Earth Aid

## What is Mini Forest?

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle <sup>(1)</sup> of our cities. These special <sup>(2)</sup> green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife <sup>(3)</sup> - like plants, animals and other living things.

At Mini Forest, we always work hard <sup>(4)</sup> to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most.

We never grow foreign plants in our projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until <sup>(5)</sup> they become a small forest.

We also usually work with local <sup>(6)</sup> communities to plant and look after <sup>(7)</sup> the forests over time.

We collect data from every forest we plant a few times a month. This helps us understand the effects of the new green space on the people, wildlife, and climate of the area.

We rarely have enough <sup>(8)</sup> volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us. Click on the link to find out <sup>(9)</sup> more.

Mini Forest - الغابة الصغيرة، هي منظمة تزرع مساحات صغيرة من الأشجار في وسط مدنتنا، تساعد هذه المناطق الحضرية الممطرة الناس على الاستمتاع بالطبيعة، وتساعد حياتنا البرية مثل النباتات والحيوانات وكائنات حية أخرى.

في Mini Forest، دائماً نعمل بجد لنختار على أفضل المواقع الحضرية بعناية، حيث نحتاج الناس والحياة البرية إلى الطبيعة أكثر من غيرهم.

نحن لا نزرع نباتات أحسنه أبداً، في مشاريعنا، نحن دائماً نزرع الأشجار التي تنمو بشكل طبيعي في منطقة ما وتعشى بها بحرص حتى تصبح غابة صغيرة.

- نعمل أيضاً عادةً مع المجتمعات المحلية لزراعة الغابات والاعتناء بها بمرور الوقت.

نجمع البيانات من كل غابة نزرعها عدة مرات في أشهر. يساعد هذا في فهم تأثيرات المساحة الحضرية، وتحديد على الناس والحياة البرية ومناخ المنطقة.

نادراً ما يكون لدينا عدد كافٍ من المتطوعين لمساعدتنا في مشاريعنا، لذلك نسعد دائماً عندما يعرض الناس مساعدتنا. انقر على الرابط لمعرفة المزيد.



(1) في المنتصف

(2) مميز

(3) الحياة البرية

(4) يعمل بجد

(5) حتى

(6) محلي

(7) يعتنى بـ

(8) كافٍ

(9) يجد





## Language Focus

### The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين.

#### Affirmative sentence: الجملة المبتدئة

... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + (اسم جمع / I/ We/ You/ They/ ) }



I visit my cousins every week.

أزور أبناء عمي/عمتي كل أسبوع.

... (s, es, ies) + (inf.) + (اسم مفرد / He/ She/ It/ )



He usually goes to school by bus.

عادة ما يذهب إلى المدرسة بالحافلة.

#### Negative sentence: الجملة السالبة

... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + don't + (اسم جمع / I/ We/ You/ They/ )



We don't like fish at all. We never eat it.

نحن لا نحب السمك على الإطلاق. نحن لا نأكله أبدًا.

... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + doesn't + (اسم مفرد / He/ She/ It/ )



Hani rarely plays football. He doesn't like sports.

نادرًا ما يلعب هاني كرة القدم. هو لا يحب الرياضة.

## Yes/No question

Question السؤال	Do	I/ you/ we/ they/ اسم جمع	... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + ?
	Does	he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	

## Answer الإجابة

Yes,	subject (المفعول)	do/ does.
No,		don't/ doesn't.



A: Does it rain in the Western Desert?

B: No, it doesn't. It rarely rains in the Western Desert.

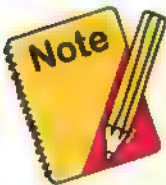
## Wh question

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I/ you/ we/ they/ اسم جمع	... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + ?
	does	he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	



A: What do you do at Sham El Nessim?

B: We always go to the park near my uncle's house.



\* We can use these time expressions to talk about how often we do something:

يمكننا استخدام تعبيرات الوقت هذه للتحدث عن عدد المرات التي نقوم فيها بشيء ما:

— مرتين في (الشهر) **twice a (month)** — مرة في الأسبوع **once a week** — كل يوم **every day**  
— ثلاث مرات في (السنة) **three times a (year)**

## Check point

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 A: How often do you play football?

B: I play it (one – once – first – two) a week.

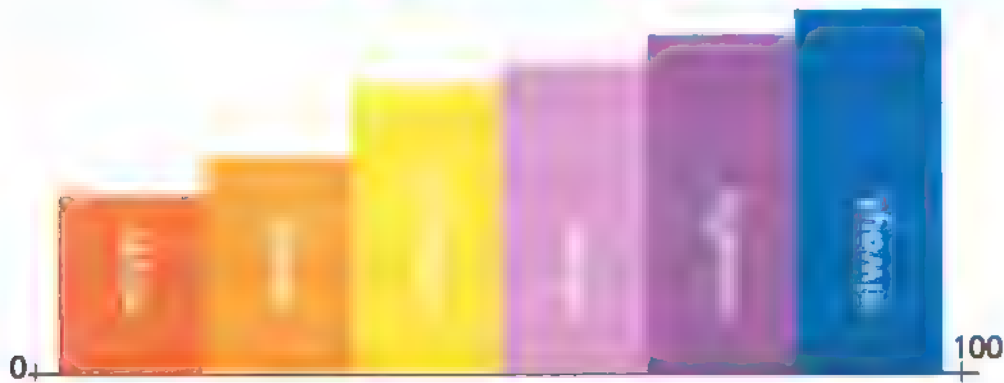
2 They (don't – doesn't – aren't – weren't) go into the city.

3 A: (Do – Does – Is – Are) Hana help at home? B: Yes, she does.

## Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after the verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل (ولكن بعد الفعل to be) للتحدث عن مدى تكرار حدوث شيء ما.



### Form

Subject

(فاعل)

adverb of frequency

main verb

الفعل الأساسي



I **often** eat dates as a snack – I love them!

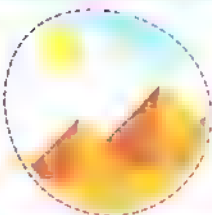
غالبًا ما أكل التمر كوجبة خفيفة - أحب ذلك!

Subject

(فاعل)

verb to be (am/ is/ are)

adverb of frequency



The weather is **usually** sunny in Egypt.

الطقس مشمس عادة في مصر.

### How often



**How often** do you work in the community garden?

كم عدد المرات التي تعمل فيها في الحديقة المجتمعية؟

I work there **a few times a month**.

أعمل هناك مرات قليلة في الشهر.







### 1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

- 1 Dalia plays basketball once a week. ( )
- 2 Dalia practices gymnastics every day. ( )
- 3 Twice a month, there's a big gymnastics competition in our region. ( )

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Hani ..... to the club every week.  
a) go                      b) goes                      c) went                      d) going
- 2 We ..... go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach. **SB**  
a) always                      b) usually                      c) sometimes                      d) often
- 3 I don't ..... my grandparents on Saturdays.  
a) visit                      b) visiting                      c) visits                      d) visited
- 4 Amira visits her aunt two times every week. She visits her aunt ..... a week.  
a) once                      b) twice                      c) three                      d) every

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

- A**
- 1 We never grow...
  - 2 We rarely have enough volunteers, ...
  - 3 We work with local communities to plant ...
  - 4 A How often do you play football with your friends?

- B**
- a. ( ) so we are happy when people offer to help us.
  - b. ( ) and look after the forests over time.
  - c. ( ) B: At the club.
  - d. ( ) B: Twice a week.
  - e. ( ) foreign plants in our projects.



**Reorder the words to make correct sentences:** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1 usually – She – to – by – goes – bus – school.

2 never – Donia and Wael – late – are – for school.

SB

3 look – the – over – We – forests – after – time.

4 grow – our projects – We – never – foreign – in – plants.



**Punctuate the following:**

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

how often do you work in the community garden



**Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

اكتب فقرة من 50–60 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجال  
آخر الكتاب

“Mini Forest”

an organization – foreign plants



### Reading



Listen and say:

اسمع وقل:

### Main vocabulary

neighborhood	الحي	floor	الطابق / الدور	view	منظر
species	فصائل / أنواع	art works	أعمال فنية	theater performance	أداء مسرحي
yoga	اليوجا	news	أخبار		

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

#### Present

create

miss

يخلق

يفتقد

#### Past

created

missed

#### Present

pass

relax

يمر

يستريح

#### Past

passed

relaxed

### Expressions and Phrases

know about ...	يعرف عن ...	really cool	رائع حقًا
walk through ...	يمشي عبر ...	go running	يذهب للجري (يجري)
much quieter	أكثر هدوءًا	doesn't taste like ...	لا يبدو طعمه مثل ...
spend time	يقضي وقتًا		

### Definitions

hang out	يتجول / يتسكع	spend time with, relax together	نقضي الوقت ونستريح معًا
local residents	السكان المحليون	people who live in a neighborhood	الناس الذين يعيشون في الحي
pass through	يمر عبر	go from one place to another	ينتقل من مكان لآخر
miss	يفتقد	feel sad that you can't have or see something	تتسبب بالحزن لأنه لا يمكنك الحصول على شيء أو رؤيته
railway line	خط السكة الحديد	a road for trains	طريق للقطارات

### Vocabulary Check

- إضافة (s) الجمع إلى التاريخ (1980s) تعبر عن الفترة من (1980) إلى (1989).

- كلمة (home) قد تعني منزلًا أو وطنًا.





Look and read:



Search

Hi Samer,

How are you? I'm **well**<sup>1</sup> and New York is great! Our apartment block is on the **sixteenth** floor, so we have a great view of the city. New York has a lot of green spaces. There are also projects to create new parks and green spaces in parts of the city that **no one**<sup>2</sup> uses now, like the famous High Line – do you know about it?



Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Some local residents then decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, eat delicious food, or go running, or just hang out with your friends. I think it's my favorite place in New York. It passes through our neighborhood, so I often go there with my parents. Here is one of my photos of it.

How are things in Alexandria? I miss home. New York is very **noisy**<sup>(3)</sup> all the time. Alexandria is much quieter at night.

There are lots of different **restaurants**<sup>4</sup> here in New York, and the food doesn't taste like the food at home. I think the food **tastes** more delicious in Egypt. I miss our food so much! Write soon and tell me all your news,

Wael

- (1) بصحة جيدة  
(2) لا أحد  
(3) صاخب  
(4) مطاعم

مرحبًا سامر

كيف حالك؟ أنا بصحة جيدة ونيويورك رائعة! نقع شقتنا في الطابق السادس عشر، لذلك لدينا إطلالة رائعة على المدينة.

نيويورك بها الكثير من المساحات الخضراء. هناك أيضًا مشاريع لإنشاء حدائق ومساحات خضراء جديدة في أجزاء من المدينة لا يستخدمها أحد الآن، مثل High Line الشهير. هل تعرفه؟

منذ سنوات، كان High Line عبارة عن خط سكة حديد، لكن في الثمانينيات توقف القطارات عن استخدامه، ثم قرر بعض السكان المحليين تحويل السكك الحديدية القديمة إلى حديقة كبيرة وطويلة يمكن للجميع استخدامها. الآن هي مساحة خضراء بها أكثر من 500 نوع من النباتات والأشجار! يبلغ طوله ٢.٥ كيلومتر، وعندما تمشي خلاله، يمكنك مشاهدة الأعمال الفنية، أو مشاهدة عرض مسرحي، أو تناول طعام لذيذ، أو مجرد الاسترخاء مع صديق.

هذه واحدة من صوري له.

كيف هي الأمور في الإسكندرية؟ اشتقت للوطن. نيويورك صاخبة جدًا طوال الوقت. الإسكندرية أكثر هدوءًا في الليل.

يوجد الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة هنا في نيويورك، والطعام لا يشبه مذاق الطعام في الوطن. أعشق أن أتناول طعام أمي في مصر. أفتقد طعامًا كثيرًا!

اكتب قريبًا وأخبرني بكل أخبارك،

وانزل

## Check point

- 1 What's Wael's favorite place in New York?.....  
2 What is the High Line? .....

SB

**Tip!**

For True/False exercises, first read the sentences carefully. Underline the key words and look for similar words in the text. Compare the information in the sentences and in the text, then choose your answer.

بأسسه سفير، صوباً - جدد، قر العمل بصفة دة، صبح خط تحت بكلمات رئيسية وأجاب عن لكلمات لمشابهة في النص.  
فازن المعلومات الواردة في الجمل والنص ثم اختر إجابتك.

e.g.

**Read the email again and answer T (True) or F (False). Correct the false sentences in your notebook.**

اقرأ البريد الإلكتروني مرة أخرى وأجب T (صواب) أو F (خطأ). صحح الجمل الخاطئة في دفتر ملاحظاتك.

1 Samer's family lives in a tall building. (T)

2 There aren't many parks in New York. (F)

**Correction:** There are many parks in New York.

3 Samer lives far from the High Line. (F)

**Correction:** Wael lives near the High Line.

4 In the past, the High Line was a road. (F)

**Correction:** In the past, the High Line was a railway line.

5 The High Line is two and a half kilometers long. (T)

6 Samer loves the local food. (T)



## Story



Listen and say:

استمع وفل:

## Main vocabulary

selfish (adj.)	أناني	giant (adj.)	عملاق	local children	أطفال القرية (السكان المحليون)
spring	فصل الربيع	hole	حفرة	tiny (adj.)	صغير الحجم

## Extra vocabulary

season	فصل / موسم	village	قرية	soft (adj.)	ناعم
colorful (adj.)	ملون	bees	نحل	lovely (adj.)	جميل
empty (adj.)	فارغ	silent (adj.)	صامت	leaves	أوراق الشجر
snow	الثلج	sound	صوت (غير بشري)	sweet (adj.)	حلو
corner	زاوية	branches	فروع		

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

Present		Past		Present		Past	
share	يشارك	shared		cover	يغطي	covered	
laugh	يضحك	laughed		climb up	يتسلق	climbed up	

## Irregular verbs

Present		Past		Present		Past	
build	يبني	built		fall	يسقط	fell	
understand	يفهم	understood		wake up	يستيقظ	woke up	
hear	يسمع	heard		sit	يجلس	sat	
feel	يشعر	felt		stand	يقف	stood	

## Expressions and Phrases

on their way home	في طريقهم إلى المنزل	turns brown	تتحول للون البني
fly away	يطير بعيدًا	What is wrong?	ما الأمر؟



## THE SELFISH GIANT

## العَملاق الأَناني



Look and read:

انظر وافراً:

## The beginning

In a village, there lives a giant who has a wonderful<sup>(1)</sup> garden. In his garden there are tall trees, beautiful flowers and soft, green grass. There are colorful birds singing in the trees and bees on the plants<sup>(2)</sup>. Every afternoon, on their way home from school, the local<sup>(3)</sup> children come to play in the giant's garden. The lovely garden always makes the children happy.

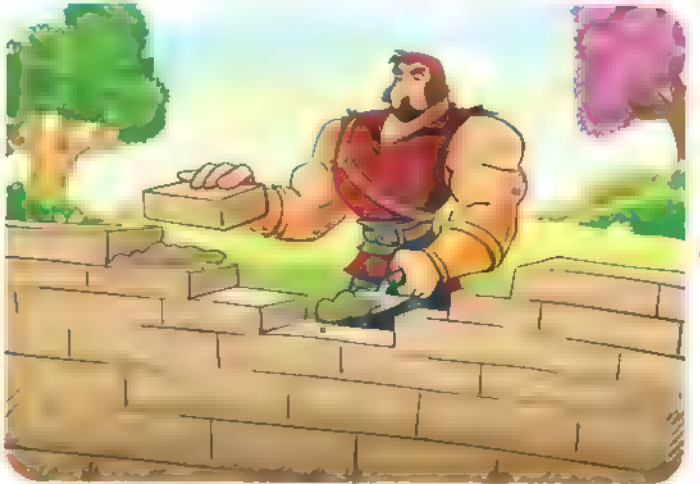


فى قرية، يعيش عملاق لديه حديقة رائعة. فى حديقته أشجار طويلة وأزهار جميلة وعشب أخضر باغم. هناك طيور ملونة تغرد فى الأشجار والنحل على النباتات. بعد ظهر كل يوم، فى طريق عودتهم إلى المنزل من المدرسة، يأتي الأطفال المحليون للعب فى حديقة العملاق. الحديقة الجميلة دائماً تجعل الأطفال سعداء.

- |     |        |
|-----|--------|
| (1) | رائع   |
| (2) | نباتات |
| (3) | محلي   |

## The middle

But the selfish giant doesn't want to share his garden, so one day he builds a big wall around it. Now the children never come there to play. The days pass and the garden is always empty and silent. Slowly<sup>(4)</sup>, the green grass turns brown. The leaves fall from the trees. Then snow covers the garden and all<sup>(5)</sup> the birds and bees fly away.



لكن العملاق الأَناني لا يريد مشاركة حديقته، لذلك فى أحد الأيام قام ببناء جدار كبير حولها. الآن الأطفال لا يأتون إلى هناك للعب. تمر الأيام والحديقة دائماً فارغة وصامتة. ببطء، يتحول العشب الأخضر إلى اللون البنى. الأوراق تسقط من الأشجار. ثم يغطي الثلج الحديقة وتطير جميع الطيور والنحل بعيداً.

- |     |      |
|-----|------|
| (4) | بطء  |
| (5) | جميع |

Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden it is still winter. Everything is under the snow. The giant doesn't understand. Usually his garden is beautiful<sup>(6)</sup> in spring! What is wrong? Then one morning he wakes up and hears a lovely sound. A little blue bird is singing in a tree outside. Then the giant hears another sweet sound - children laughing.



جميل

(6)

يصل الربيع إلى القرية، لكن لا يزال الشتاء في حديقة العملاق. يعطي الثلج كل شيء، العملاق لا يستوعب ماذا حدث؟ فعادة ما تكون حديقته جميلة في الربيع. ما الخطأ؟ ثم في صباح أحد الأيام استيقظ وسمع صوتًا جميلًا. طائر أزرق صغير يعنى في شجرة بالحارج. ثم يسمع العملاق صوتًا لطيفًا آخر - أطفال يضحكون.

### The end

He looks out of the window and sees that the children have come back<sup>(7)</sup> through a hole in the garden wall. Now they are sitting in the trees. The leaves on the trees are green again and flowers are opening around them. The giant feels so happy to see his garden grow again.

But in one corner of the garden, it is still winter. The giant sees a tiny boy standing there. He is too small to climb up into the tree. Suddenly<sup>(8)</sup> the giant understands everything. "Now I know why the spring didn't come," he says, I think it's because I was selfish about my garden." He goes out and helps the little boy climb up into the tree. Suddenly, all the leaves on the tree open and the birds fly up into its branches and start to sing. "When you're not selfish," the giant says, "good things happen."



يعود  
فجأة

(7)

(8)

ينظر العملاق من النافذة ويراى ان الأطفال قد عادوا من خلال ثقب في جدار الحديقة. الآن هم يجلسون في الأشجار الخضراء مرة أخرى وفتحت الأزهار من حولها. يشعر العملاق بسعادة غامرة لرؤية حديقته تنمو مرة أخرى. لكن في إحدى زوايا الحديقة، لا يزال شتاء. يرى العملاق فتى صغيراً واقفاً هناك. إنه صغير جداً لدرجة أنه لا يستطيع التسلق على الشجرة. فجأة، يفهم العملاق كل شيء. "الآن أعرف لماذا لم يأت الربيع،" يقول، "أعتقد أنه لأنني أناني بشأن حديقتي." يخرج ويُساعِدُ الفتى الصغير على التسلق إلى الشجرة. فجأة، تفتح كل الأوراق على الشجرة وتطير الطيور إلى أغصانها وتبدأ في الغناء. يقول العملاق: «عندما لا تكون أنانيًا، تحدث الأشياء الجيدة».

### Check point

- 1 Where does the giant live?
- 2 How is the giant different at the end of the story?

SB



## Pronunciation



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

/s/

sick

مريض

so

لذلك

pass (v.)

يمر / ينجح

mouse

فأر

sing (v.)

يغنى

seed

بذرة

stalk

ساق النبات

bus

أتوبيس

six

سته

sunset

وقت الغروب

sky

سما

sunny

شمس

/θ/

thumb

إبهام

think (v.)

يفكر

thick

كثيف

throw (v.)

يلقى / يرمى

path

طريق

mouth

فم

thing

شء

thanks

شكرًا

thirsty

عطشان

bath

حمام

thin

نحيف

thunder

رعد

threat

تهديد





### 1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

- 1 The giant has a small garden. ( )
- 2 The giant builds a wall around his garden. ( )
- 3 When you're selfish, good things happen. ( )

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We live in an apartment block on the tenth .....  
 a) flower                      b) flour                      c) floor                      d) flood
- 2 The ..... giant doesn't want to share his garden.  
 a) sad                      b) selfish                      c) happy                      d) kind
- 3 "....." means to spend time and relax together.  
 a) Pass through                      b) Hang out                      c) Miss                      d) Create
- 4 "....." are the people who live in a neighborhood.  
 a) Foreigners                      b) Egyptians                      c) Children                      d) Local residents

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

- A**
- 1 New York is very noisy.
  - 2 "Pass through" means ...
  - 3 A "railway line" is ...
  - 4 The lovely garden ...

- B**
- a. ( ) a road for cars.
  - b. ( ) always makes the children happy.
  - c. ( ) Alexandria is much quieter at night.
  - d. ( ) a road for trains.
  - e. ( ) to go from one place to another.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

New York has a lot of green spaces, like the famous High Line. The High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s, trains stopped using it. Some local residents decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long, and when you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, eat delicious food, or go running, or just hang out with your friends.

## Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- New York has a lot of green ....., like the famous High Line.  
a) hospitals      b) building      c) spaces      d) schools
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .....  
a) green space      b) idea      c) yoga      d) High Line

## Answer the following questions:

- How long is the park?

- What can you do in the park?

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

How are things in alexandria



## 6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من 50–60 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجالس  
أعمال

## "The High Line"

What and where is it? – How important is it?



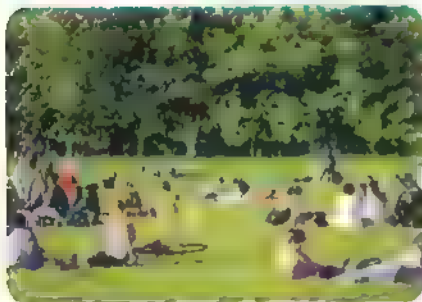


Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

### Donia's email to her friend Laila in Luxor

From:	donia@qwikmail.com
To:	laila@egyptmail.com
Subject:	My new life in Scotland



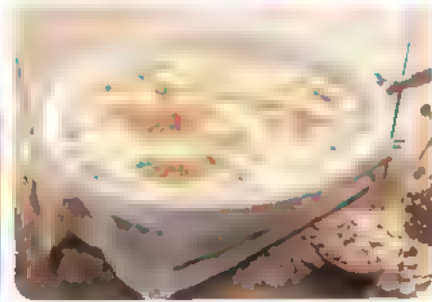
The Meadows

«حدائق» المروج



Edinburgh Castle

قلعة أدنبرة



porridge

عصيدة (أكلة شعبية في أسكتلندا)

Hi Laila,

How are things with you?

I'm **finally**<sup>2</sup> in Scotland with Mom, Dad, and Hani. It's really interesting!

Our apartment is in the **city center**<sup>3</sup>, just next to a really cool park called The Meadows. It's on the **third floor**<sup>4</sup> and the park is **on the other side**<sup>5</sup> of the street, so we have a great **view**<sup>6</sup> over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and meeting friends, so there's always something to see there. **In the distance**<sup>7</sup>, we can see the famous **Edinburgh Castle**<sup>8</sup>, too!



- (1) أسكتلندا
- (2) أخيرًا
- (3) وسط المدينة
- (4) الدور الثالث
- (5) على الجانب الآخر
- (6) منظر
- (7) من بعيد
- (8) قلعة أدنبرة

مرحبًا ليلي

كيف هي الأمور معك؟

أنا أخيرًا في أسكتلندا مع أمي وأبي وهاني. إنها مثيرة للاهتمام حقًا!

نحن نعيش في وسط المدينة، بجوار حديقة رائعة تسمى The Meadows. نحن في 'مناطق' وسط وشمس حديقة على جانب الآخر من الشارع. نزلت في الدور الثالث على الجانب الآخر من الشارع، لذلك يمكننا رؤية شجرة كبيرة فوق الحدائق. نرى شجرة كبيرة فوق الحدائق، لذلك يمكننا رؤية شجرة كبيرة فوق الحدائق. يمكننا أن نرى من مسافة بعيدة قلعة أدنبرة الشهيرة أيضًا!



I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt – the warm, sunny weather (it's never hot here) and **especially**<sup>9</sup> the food! **Scottish**<sup>10</sup> food is OK but Egyptian food is **better**! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat **porridge**<sup>11</sup>. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put **honey**<sup>12</sup> on it, but I don't really like it! I really miss my favorite Egyptian breakfast, *ful medames*!

The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I often go to my friend Rhona's house after school. We study together and sometimes we watch TV – in English!

Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home.

Lots of love,

Donia

أحب اسكتلندا، لكن هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي فوّضتها في مصر. نطقس الدافئ المسمس ليس نحو حاراً هنا أبداً، وخصوصاً الطعام الإسكتلندي جيد لكن لطعام المصري قصص عن سس مصر، لنأكل الإفطار، نأكل الكثير من الإسكتلنديين بعضه، عده ما يصعبونها بالحليب، ويضعون عليها أحياناً العسل، لكن أنا فعلاً لا أحبها. أفتقد حقاً إفطاري المصري المفضل، فول مدمس! الناس هنا لطيفون ولدي الكثير من الأصدقاء. نحدد في مدرسته، عده ما أذهب إلى منزل سديقي رونا بعد امتدسه ونذاكر معاً وأحياناً نشاهد التلفزيون - باللغة الإنجليزية!

اكتبي لي أيضاً من فصلك وحدثيني عن الجديد في الوطن.

الكثير من الحب،

دينا

### Check point

1 Where did Donia travel?

2 What did Donia miss about Egypt?



Read and notice:

افقرأ ولاحظ :

## كيف تكتب بريداً إلكترونياً غير رسمي

## How to write an informal email

An informal email is a message you write to friends or family. An informal email should be friendly in tone, use informal language, and include opening and closing phrases.

البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي هو رسالة تكتبها لمن تعرفه . يكون نبرة رسالتك غير رسمية ، ودود في أسلوبه، ويستخدم لغة غير رسمية، ويتضمن عبارات افتتاحية وخاتمة.

From	: عنوان البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالمرسل
To	: عنوان البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالمرسل إليه
Subject	: عنوان الموضوع

Opening phrase عبارة افتتاحية	• Hi Laila
A question to reader سؤال للقارئ	• How are things with you?
Informal expressions تعابير غير رسمية	• a really cool park, 😊 • it tastes pretty yucky 🤢
A request to reader طلب من القارئ	• Please write back soon.
Closing phrase عبارة ختامية	• Lots of love



### 1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

- 1 I miss the warm, sunny ..... of Egypt.
- 2 For breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat .....
- 3 They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put ..... on it.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

- A**
- 1 The park is on the other side of the street, ...
  - 2 Scottish food is OK, but ...
  - 3 For breakfast, ...
  - 4 I'm finally in Scotland.

- B**
- a. ( ) Egyptian food is better.
  - b. ( ) so we have a great view over the trees.
  - c. ( ) a lot of Scottish people eat porridge.
  - d. ( ) It's really interesting.
  - e. ( ) a lot of Scottish people eat ful medames.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hana. I'm finally in Scotland. Our apartment is on the third floor and the park is on the other side of the street, so we have a great view over the trees. People use the park a lot for sports and making friends, so there's always something to see there. Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually make it with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I don't really like it!

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A lot of Scottish people eat .....  
 a) ful medames    b) porridge    c) milk    d) honey
- 2 Egyptian food is ..... than the Scottish food.  
 a) worse    b) smaller    c) better    d) farther



### Answer the following questions:

3 Where is Hana?

4 What do people do at the park?

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

1 things – you – How – with – are?

2 eat – breakfast – Scottish – for – porridge – people.

3 have – friends – school – a lot of – I – new – at.

4 is – Our – the – center – in – apartment – city.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

I'm finally in scotland

6 Write an informal email of about 50–60 words to your friend in Egypt telling them about your new life:

اجاب عنه  
آخر الكتاب

اكتب بريداً إلكترونياً غير رسمي يتكون من 50–60 كلمة إلى صديقك في مصر لإخباره عن حياتك الجديدة:

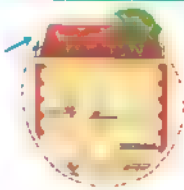
From :	
To :	
Subject :	
<p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>	



## Vocabulary



apartment block



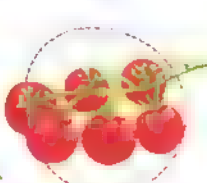
roof



natural fertilizer



chemicals



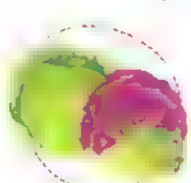
tomatoes



peppers



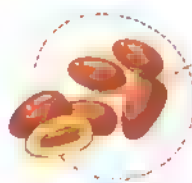
onions



lettuce



lemons



dates

## Language Focus

### Adverbs of frequency

We use adverbs of frequency before a verb (but after the verb to be) to talk about how often an action happens.



### Form:

Subject (فاعل) → adverbs of frequency → main verb (الفعل الأساسي)



I **often** eat dates as a snack – I love them!

Subject (فاعل) → verb to be (am / is / are) → adverbs of frequency



The weather is **usually** sunny in Egypt

## Pronunciation

/s/

sick	stalk
so	bus
pass	six
mouse	sunset
sing	sky
seed	sunny

/θ/

thumb	thanks
think	thirsty
thick	bath
throw	thin
path	thunder
mouth	threat
thing	

# Unit 1

## CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



### Lesson 1

.....	مبنى سكنى	.....	يزرع
.....	سماد طبيعى	.....	سطح
.....	يحصد	.....	مواد كيميائية
.....	فلقل	.....	طماطم
.....	خس	.....	بصل
.....	بلح (تمر)	.....	ليمون

### Lesson 2

.....	مصغر	.....	شعار
.....	منظمة	.....	غابة
.....	تأثيرات	.....	الطبيعة
.....	بيانات	.....	موقع
.....	أجنبى	.....	حضرى
.....	بحث	.....	متطوعون
.....	مناخ	.....	مجتمعات

### Lesson 3

.....	الطابق / الدور	.....	الحى
.....	فصائل / أنواع	.....	منظر
.....	أداء	.....	مسرح
.....	عملاق	.....	أنانى
.....	كثيف	.....	إيهام
.....	يمر	.....	يرمى
.....	بذرة	.....	ممر
.....	حمام	.....	ساق النبات
.....	تهديد	.....	وقت الغروب



## WRITING TIME



### How to write about "Mini Forest":

- Mini Forest is (تعريف المنظمة).
- Mini Forest helps (فوائد المنظمة).
- We plant (نوع النباتات التي يتم زراعتها).
- We need (حاجات المنظمة).

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. Mini Forest helps people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.

We always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest. We need more volunteers to join the Mini Forest movement!

### How to write an informal email:

- Start with an opening phrase.
- Ask about the reader's health/news.
- Use informal expressions.
- End with a friendly closing phrase.

From	: nadia@gmail.com
To	: nahla@gmail.com
Subject	: my visit to Paris

Hello Nahla,  
How are things in Alexandria?  
I'm spending a great time in Paris. I got a family ticket to Disneyland. I'm super excited. I went to the Louver museum, but guess what! It was pretty boring. People here are nice and the food is yummy too.  
Write to me soon to tell me your news  
Lots of love  
Nadia.

### How to write about a project to create green spaces:

- (اسم المشروع) is in (اسم المدينة) ....
- Years ago, (اسم المشروع) was (باريح المشروع) .
- Now it's (تحول المكان)
- It is (طول المشروع) long ...
- When you walk through it, you can (أنشطة داخل المشروع) ....

The High Line is in New York. Years ago, the High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s trains stopped using it. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees in it! It is 2.5 kms long. When you walk through it, you can see art works, watch a theater performance, or just hang out with your friends.

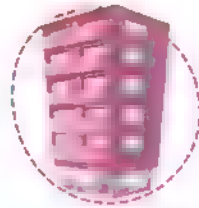
### 1 Look and write:

apartment block – chemicals – harvest – natural fertilizer – plant – roof

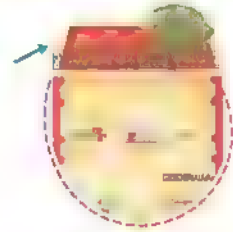
1



2



3



4



5



6



### 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 10 pm – usually – in bed – before – I'm.

2 always – My dad – a big breakfast – in the morning – eats.

3 the dentist – you – go – How – do – often – to?

4 rains – It – the Western Desert – rarely – in.

### 3 Circle the correct adverb in each sentence:

1 We don't like fish at all. We (often – never) eat it.

2 Date palm trees (usually – never) produce fruit.

3 My aunt lives with us, so I (often – rarely) speak to her.

4 I (sometimes – never) do my homework in the afternoon, but I prefer to do it in the evening.

5 Hani (rarely – often) plays football. He doesn't like sports.



### 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

sometimes – always – doesn't – have

My name is Sama. I ..... wake up at 7 o'clock as I always have my breakfast at seven thirty. I sometimes ..... lunch at work. I never watch TV in the afternoon. I always read books in the evening. I ..... have dinner at 7 o'clock. I always sleep at 10 o'clock.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 A: ..... do you play tennis? B: Twice a week.  
a) How much      b) How many      c) How often      d) How old
- 2 We ..... water the plants in the morning.  
a) always      b) do      c) isn't      d) doesn't
- 3 I ..... watch TV before I sleep. It's unhealthy.  
a) sometimes      b) usually      c) often      d) never
- 4 I never ..... unhealthy foods.  
a) eats      b) eating      c) eat      d) ate

### 3 Correct the underlined words:

صحح الكلمة التي تحتها خط:

- 1 I always play basketball. I'm bad at it. ( ..... )
- 2 A How many do you make lunch? B: Twice a week. ( ..... )
- 3 Yara never travels to Cairo. She travels once a month. ( ..... )
- 4 It's rarely sunny and hot in the summer. ( ..... )



## Listening

### 1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

- 1 The High Line is in Cairo. ( )
- 2 The High Line was a railway line. ( )
- 3 It is 2.9 kms long. ( )

### 2 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

- 1 Mariam always helps her aunt at the ..... garden.
- 2 It's a big green space on the ..... of my Aunt Salma's apartment block.
- 3 The people who work there are all ..... from the neighborhood.



## Reading

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 The ..... giant doesn't want to share his garden.  
a) happy                      b) kind                      c) selfish                      d) helpful
- 2 We don't use ..... when we grow organic food.  
a) fertilizers                      b) chemicals                      c) seeds                      d) water
- 3 We ..... go cycling on holiday, but most days we relax on the beach.  
a) sometimes                      b) always                      c) never                      d) rarely
- 4 A ..... do you work in your garden? B: Twice a week.  
a) Where                      b) Why                      c) How long                      d) How often

### 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل العمود (أ) بالعمود (ب):

- A**
- 1 "Railway line" means ...
  - 2 From one square meter of roof garden, ...
  - 3 Mini Forest works with the local communities ...
  - 4 People use the park ...

- B**
- a. ( ) for sports and making friends.
  - b. ( ) we can harvest twenty kilos of vegetables a year.
  - c. ( ) to plant and look after the forests over time.
  - d. ( ) a road for trains
  - e. ( ) to want something you can't have.

### 5 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. These special green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife. At Mini Forest, we always work hard to find the best urban locations for our forests, where people and wildlife need nature most. We never grow foreign plants in our



projects, we always plant trees that grow naturally in an area and we carefully look after them until they become a small forest. We rarely have enough volunteers to help us with our projects, so we are always happy when people offer to help us.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The underlined pronoun "them" refers to .....  
a) small forests      b) organizations      c) trees      d) wildlife
- 2 We need more ..... to join the Mini Forest movement!  
a) students      b) volunteers      c) foreigners      d) players

**Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What is Mini Forest? .....
- 4 Summarize the benefits of the organization for people and nature.  
.....



**Writing**

**6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:** أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكون جملاً صحيحة:

- 1 does – How – eat – she – often – dates?  
.....
- 2 want to – Do – house – my – come to – you?  
.....
- 3 is – Egypt – The – in – sunny – weather – usually.  
.....
- 4 We – work – communities – usually – local – with.  
.....

**7 Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

Where does Mariam go on fridays  
.....

**8 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:** اكتب فقرة من 50–60 كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاوب  
أحر الكتاب

"Daily routine"

I always – I never

.....

.....

.....

.....



## We are all different

جميعنا مختلفون



Unit Overview

Student's Book  
ExercisesPractice  
MoreAnswers  
100%

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون المتعلم قادراً على أن:

- listen, read, and write about people's personalities. • يسمع، يقرأ ويكتب عن شخصيات الناس.
- make clear what people, places, and things he/she's talking about using who, which, and where • يوضح الأشخاص والأماكن والأشياء التي يتحدث/تحدث عنها باستخدام «who» و «which» و «where».
- describe his/her own and other people's feelings. • يصف مشاعره/مشاعرها الخاصة ومشاعر الناس.
- say the sounds /ʌ/ and /æ/. • يقول الأصوات /ʌ/ و /æ/.
- write an essay explaining the positive and negative qualities of something. • يكتب مقالاً يشرح الصفات الإيجابية والسلبية لشيء ما.
- make a leaflet about his/her school. • يصنع منشوراً عن مدرسته/مدرستها.

## Did you know?

- The way you move gives other people information about your **\*personality**. Each person has a unique way of moving, just like we each have our own handwriting. People who move in similar ways often become friends and work well together.

## I can find it out!

- A person's personality is how they think and **\*behave**. People are born with signs of their personalities, but they develop and change over years.

\* personality

شخصية

\* behave

يتصرف



He's very clever  
إنه ذكي جدًا



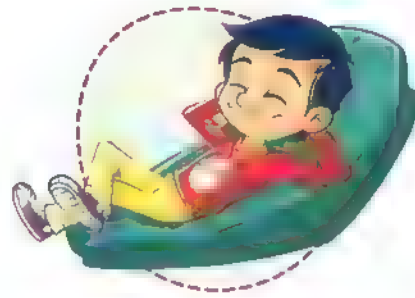
Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

### Main vocabulary



shy  
خجول



calm  
هادئ



clever  
ذكي



polite  
مودب



messy  
فوضوي



organized  
منظم



nervous  
متوتر / عصبي



## Extra vocabulary

a bit	قليلاً / إلى حد ما	friendly (adj.)	ودود
break	فترة الاستراحة	yet	حتى الآن
textbooks	الكتب الدراسية	already	بالفعل
extra	إضافي	copy	نسخة
worksheets	ورق تدريبات	worried (adj.)	قلق
tidy (adj.)	مرتب	helpful (adj.)	متعاون
intelligent (adj.)	ذكي	quiet (adj.)	هادئ
carefully	بحرص	correctly	بشكل صحيح

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
help	يساعد	helped
ask	يسأل	asked
share	يتشارك	shared

Present		Past
stay	يبقى	stayed
need	يحتاج	needed

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met

Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew

## Expressions and Phrases

get to know	يتعرف على	take you around	يأخذك في جولة بأحاء المكان
don't worry	لا تقلق	good at	جيد في
welcome to ...	مرحباً بك في ...	I'm not sure.	لست متأكدًا.
come on	تعال	show respect	يُظهر الاحترام





## Definitions

friendly ودود	nice to others, helpful	لطيف مع الآخرين، متعاون
shy خجول	worried about talking to people, quiet	قلق من التحدث إلى الناس، هادئ
clever ذكي	intelligent, good at school work	ذكي، جيد في العمل المدرسي
polite مهذب	speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect	يتحدث بحرص وبشكل صحيح، يظهر الاحترام
messy فوضوي	not tidy or organized	غير مرتب أو منظم
organized منظم	tidy, careful	مرتب، حريص
nervous متوتر (عصبي)	not calm, worried	غير هادئ، قلق



## Let's say it right!

❗ لاحظ أن حرف الـ (l) في (calm) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.

## Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Salma is nice to others. She's (calm – friendly – shy – sad).
- 2 I'm (shy – messy – clever – nice). I worry about talking to people.
- 3 The living room is very (messy – polite – nervous – friendly).
- 4 He always shows respect to his grandmother. He's very (bad – excited – calm – polite).



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Asser

Hi, Hazem! I'm Asser. You look worried. Is everything OK?

مرحبًا حازم! أنا أسر. تبدو قلقًا. هل كل شيء بخير؟

Hi, Asser! It's my first day at school and I feel a bit nervous and shy.

أهلاً أسر! إنه يومي الأول في المدرسة وأشعر ببعض التوتر والخجل.

Hazem



Asser

Don't worry, we are all friendly. I can help you get to know the school.

لا تقلق، جميعنا ودودون للعابة. يمكنني أن أساعدك في التعرف على المدرسة.

Hazem



Really! Can you?

فعلاً! أحقًا يمكنك ذلك؟



Asser

Sure. I can take you around, show you where your classroom is, and stay with you at break! Let's go meet some of my friends. Look! There's Basel, Hey, Basel!

بالأكيد، يمكنني أن أصطحبك وأريك مكان فصلك وأبقى معك في فترة الاستراحة! دعنا نقابل بعضًا من أصدقائي. انظروا إنه باسل، أهلاً باسل.

Basel



Hi Asser!

أهلاً أسر!



Asser

Hazem, this is Basel. He's very clever and he's good at math. You can ask him if you need any help with your homework! Basel, this is Hazem. He's starting school here today.

حازم هذا باسل. إنه ذكي جدًا وجيد في الرياضيات. يمكنك أن تسأله إذا كنت بحاجة إلى أي مساعدة في واجبك المنزلي! باسل، هذا حازم. إنه يبدأ الدراسة هنا اليوم.

Basel



Hi, Hazem. Welcome to our school.

أهلاً، حازم. مرحبًا بك في مدرستنا.



Asser

He's so polite!

إنه مهذب جدًا!

Basel

Thanks.! Do you have all your books yet, Hazem?

شكرًا! هل معك كل كتبك يا حازم؟



Hazem

I'm not sure. I have a lot of books in my room at home but I'm a bit messy. I'm not sure which textbooks I already have.

لست متأكدًا. لدى الكثير من الكتب في غرفتي في المنزل ولكنني فوضوي بعض الشيء. لست متأكدًا من الكتب المدرسية التي أمتلكها بالفعل.

Basel

We can share my book today. And I have an extra copy of the worksheets ...

يمكننا مشاركة كتابي اليوم. ولدي نسخة إضافية من أوراق التدريبات ...



Hazem

Wow! You're really organized. Thanks, Basel!

رائع! أنت منظم جدًا. شكرًا باسل!

Asser

Come on, I'll show you where the science classroom is.

تعال، سأريك أين يوجد فصل العلوم.



## Language Notes



Making suggestions:

لتقديم الاقتراحات:

Let's + (inf.) مصدر الفعل



- Let's go meet our friends.



### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Hana ..... new students at her school.
- 2 Hana shows the new students where their ..... are.
- 3 Sometimes, the new students are nervous and .....

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 A Do you have all your books yet?
  - 2 Yara is very clever.
  - 3 He's a messy person.
  - 4 A How did you feel on your first day at school?

- B**
- a. ( ) He's not tidy or organized.
  - b. ( ) B: I felt nervous and shy.
  - c. ( ) B: I'm not sure.
  - d. ( ) extra copy of the worksheets.
  - e. ( ) She's intelligent, and good at school work.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Omar. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I take them around, and I stay with them at the break. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ali. He was very nervous and shy because it was his first day at school. I showed him around the school because we're all friendly. I helped him with the textbooks. I shared my book with him, and I gave him extra copies of the worksheets.

#### Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about .....
  - a) teachers at school
  - b) helping new students
  - c) cleaners at school
  - d) brothers at school
- 2 Ali was nervous and ..... because it was his first day at school.
  - a) excited
  - b) tidy
  - c) shy
  - d) calm



### Answer the following questions:

3 How does Omar help new students at his school?

.....

4 What did Omar share with Ali?

.....

### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 nervous – I – shy – feel – and – a bit.

.....

2 share – can – today – We – books – my.

.....

3 Amira – very – nice – is – helpful – and.

.....

4 yet – have – Do – all – you – books – your?

.....

### 5 Punctuate the following:

basel is clever and good at math



.....

### 6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

محتاج  
آخر الكتاب

“Helping new students at school”

- How do new students feel?
- How can you help them?

.....

.....

.....

.....



We are proud of our school!

نحن فخورون بمدرستنا!



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

### Home and school

website	موقع إلكتروني	building	مبنى
court	ملعب	gym (gymnasium)	صالة ألعاب رياضية

### Extra vocabulary

modern (adj.)	حديث (عصري)	map	خريطة
laboratories	معامل	equipment	أدوات
experiments	تجارب	benches	مقاعد
fountain	نافورة	information technology	تكنولوجيا المعلومات
desktop	مكتب	gymnastics	رياضة بدنية
physical education	التربية الرياضية	department	قسم

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
contact	يتواصل	borrow	يستعير
	contacted		borrowed

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sit	يجلس	feel	يشعر
	sat		felt

### Expressions and Phrases

proud of	فخور بـ	find out	يكتشف	do experiments	يجري تجارب
run (after school sports)	يدير / يتابع	five-a-side football			كرة القدم الخماسية

### Vocabulary Check

e.g: El Fouad School

IT= information technology

- أسماء الأماكن المشهورة والاحتصارات تبدأ بأحرف كبيرة.

- لاحظ أن كلمة "equipment" ليس لها مفرد.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

الصفحة الرئيسية

معلومات عن الصفحة

تواصل معنا

Home

About

Contact

Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. We are proud of our new, modern buildings and we are happy to show them to you. Please study the map and find out where the **main**<sup>(1)</sup> buildings are, and what we use them for.

(1)

رئيسي

مرحباً بكم في مدرسة الفؤاد المكان الذي نفخر به نحن فخورون بمبانيه الحديثة وأحدثه وسعدنا ان نعرضها لك بوجه دراسة الخريطة ومعرفة أماكن المباني الرئيسية وأغراض استخدامها.

## 1 The Ahmed Zewail Building

This is the place where students study science. There are four classrooms and two new laboratories. These laboratories have all the equipment which classes need to do experiments.



مبنى أحمد زويل: هذا هو المكان الذي يدرس فيه الطلاب العلوم. هناك أربعة فصول دراسية ومعملان حديثان حيث يمكن التعامل على جميع المعدات التي تحتاجها الفصول لإجراء التجارب.

## 2 The West Court

This is a large **open area**<sup>(2)</sup> where students spend time outside. There is a **playground**<sup>(3)</sup> and **playing field**<sup>(4)</sup>. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. Children can also grow plants with Mr Mahdi. He is the teacher who helps in the garden.

(2) منطقة مفتوحة

(3) ملعب

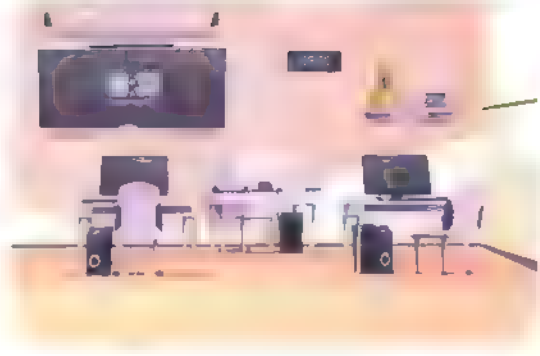
(4) ساحة للعب

الملعب الغربي: هذه منطقة مفتوحة كبيرة حيث يقضي الطلاب الوقت بالخارج. هناك ملعب وساحة لعب هناك أيضاً مقعد للحيوانات الأليفة حيث لا يمكن للطلاب أن يمشوا مع الكلاب. إنه المعلم الذي يساعد في الحديقة.



### 3 The IT Building

This is the building where you can find our computer classrooms. Students come here for their Information Technology lessons. We have over 50 desktop computers, plus **laptops**<sup>(5)</sup> and **tablets**<sup>(6)</sup> which students can borrow.



مبنى تكنولوجيا المعلومات: هذا هو مبنى حيث ستجد أجهزة الكمبيوتر المكتبية وأجهزة الكمبيوتر المحمولة (5) وأجهزة لوحية (6) التي يمكن للطلاب اقتراضها.

### 4 The 2024 Gym

The yellow building is our new gymnasium. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons. There are some teachers who run after school sports clubs here too, like five-a-side football (Mr Afifi, math department) and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).



(5) كمبيوتر محمول

(6) جهاز لوحى (تابلت)

9

صالة الألعاب الرياضية 2024: هذا هو المبنى الجديد الذي نستخدمه لرياضة كرة السلة، كرة اليد، والجمباز خلال حصص التربية البدنية. هناك بعض المعلمين الذين يقيمون أندية رياضية بعد المدرسة هنا أيضًا، مثل كرة القدم الخمسة (السيد أفيفي، قسم الرياضيات) والتنس (السيدة منال، قسم اللغة الفرنسية).

## Checkpoint

1 Where can the students spend time outside?

2 What is the "IT Building"?





## Relative pronouns ضمائر الوصل

We use "who, which, and where" to give more information about a particular singular or plural person, thing, or place.

نستخدم who, which and where لتعريف شخص، شيء، أو مكان مفرد أو جمع.

## who

We use "who" to talk about people. نستخدم «who» عند التحدث عن أشخاص.

Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.

الأستاذ عفيفي هو المعلم الذي يدير نادي كرة القدم.



## which

We use "which" to talk about things. نستخدم «which» نتحدث عن أشياء.

These are the shoes which I wear to school.

هذا هو الحذاء الذي أرتديه للمدرسة.



## where

We use "where" to talk about places.

نستخدم «where» للتحدث عن الأماكن.

This is the building where we do physical education.

هذا هو المبنى الذي نقوم فيه بالتربية البدنية.



When we use 'who, which, or where', we don't need to repeat the subject of the sentence.

عندما نستخدم "who, which, where"، لا نحتاج إلى تكرار الفاعل في الجملة.

Mr Afifi is the teacher. Mr Afifi runs the football club.

نحذف الفاعل المكرر في الجملة الثابتة ونضيف ضمير الوصل ونصح جملة واحدة.

Mr Afifi is the teacher who runs the football club.

## Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Mrs Mai is the teacher (where – what – who – which) teaches us English.
- 2 The supermarket is the place (who – where – which – when) we buy food.
- 3 These are the notebooks (which – how – where – when) I take to school.

## -ed adjectives

We use “-ed” adjectives to describe how a person feels.

نستخدم الصفات التي تنتهي بـ -ed لوصف كيف يشعر كل شخص.

excited

متحمس

interested

مهتم

surprised

متفاجئ

bored

ممل

tired

مرهق



I'm bored.

أنا أشعر بالملل.

## -ing adjectives

We use “-ing” adjectives to describe people or things that give us feelings.

نستخدم الصفات التي تنتهي بـ -ing لوصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء التي تسبب لنا المشاعر.

exciting

مثير

interesting

مثير للاهتمام

surprising

مفاجئ

boring

ممل

tiring

مضطرب



The TV series is really exciting.

المسلسل التلفزيوني مثير جداً.

## Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 My birthday party was (surprising – excited – surprised – tired).
- 2 The tennis match is (excited – bored – boring – interested). I don't like it.
- 3 I'm very (interest – boring – interested – interesting) in English books.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Wandaland is a **fantasy** TV series <sup>١</sup> which is popular with people of all age groups. It's interesting because it **takes place** <sup>٢</sup> in the future on a planet called Wanda. This is a world where **humans** <sup>(4)</sup> live because the Earth is now too hot.

«واندالاند» هو مسلسل تلفزيوني خيالي يخطى بشعبية بين الناس من جميع الفئات العمرية. إنه ممتع لأنه يحدث في المستقبل على كوكب اسمه «واندا». إنه عالم حيثما يعيش الناس لأن الأرض أصبحت الآن حارة جدًا.

خيالي

(1)

مسلسل

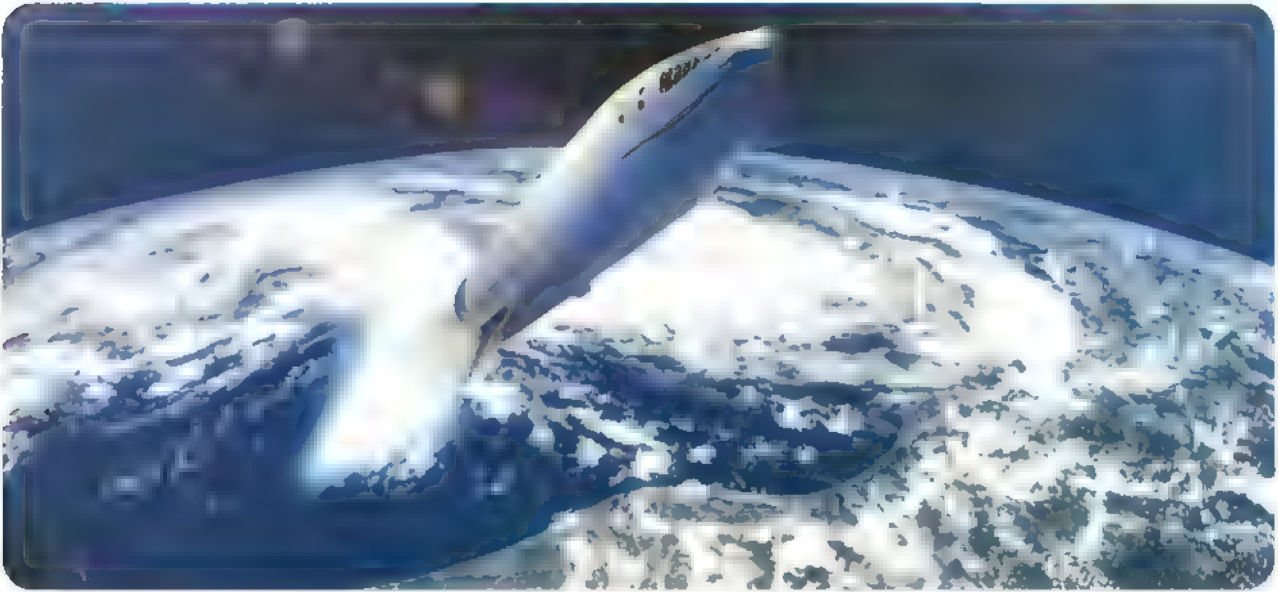
(2)

يحدث

(3)

بشر

(4)



The series tells the story of a boy called Frey who wants to **return** <sup>٣</sup> to Earth to **look for** <sup>٤</sup> his family. Frey is a clever, quiet boy who finds life on Wanda where he doesn't have many friends, but he thinks perhaps his family is still **alive** <sup>٥</sup>, so he decides to hide on a **spaceship** <sup>٦</sup> which is traveling to Earth.

يعود

(5)

يبحث عن

(6)

على قيد الحياة

(7)

سفينة فضاء

(8)

مسلسل يحكي قصة ولد يسمى «فري» وهو يريد أن يعود إلى الأرض لبحث عن عائلته «فري» هو ولد ذكي وهدوء وجد حياته على كوكب «واندا» حيث لا يملك أصدقاء كثيرين ولكنه يعتقد أنه من المحتمل أن تكون عائلته على قيد الحياة، وبذلك قرر أن يخفي على من المركبة الفضائية المتجهة إلى الأرض.

The problem is he doesn't really know where his parents are and he might not find them. I'm excited to see what happens next!

المشكلة أنه لا يعلم حقًا أين والديه، ومن المحتمل ألا يحددهما.

أنا متشوق لأرى ما سيحدث فيما بعد!



### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 The school's buildings are ..... and new.
- 2 Ahmed studies ..... in the Ahmed Zewail Building.
- 3 They have ..... in the West Court.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 This is the uniform ...
  - 2 There are some teachers ...
  - 3 This is a large open area where ...
  - 4 The children feel bored ...

- B**
- a. ( ) students have recess. **SB**
  - b. ( ) which I wear at school.
  - c. ( ) use a map.
  - d. ( ) who run after school sports clubs here too. **SB**
  - e. ( ) when there's nothing to do.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We do science experiments in the .....  
 a) playground    b) laboratory    c) gymnasium    d) IT building
- 2 This is the street ..... my uncle lives. **SB**  
 a) when    b) what    c) where    d) who
- 3 The book is really .....  
 a) interesting    b) interested    c) excited    d) tired
- 4 We play basketball and handball during the ..... lessons.  
 a) science    b) IT    c) physical education    d) French



#### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 do – laboratories – in – We – the – experiments.

.....

2 The yellow – is – gymnasium – our – building – new.

.....

3 where – This – work – is – the office – I.

.....

4 night – really – was – last – I – tired.

.....

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

i'm really interested in science

.....

#### 6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

محتاج فيه  
لايفر (الكتاب)

“Your school”

How many laboratories?

two laboratories

What do you play at the gymnasium? basketball and handball

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....





### Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

### Main vocabulary

Hare	أنتي الأرنب البري	stomach	معدة
forest	غابة	lake	بحيرة

### Extra vocabulary

sunny (adj.)	شمس	grass	عشب	suddenly	فجأة
loud (adj.)	صاخب/ عال	noise	إزعاج/ ضجيج	voice	صوت
scared (adj.)	خائف	clever (adj.)	ذكي	favorite (adj.)	مفضل
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	the biggest (adj.)	الأكبر	the strongest (adj.)	الأقوى
the bravest (adj.)	الأشجع	mice	فئران	quickly	بسرعة
away	بعيد	sorry (adj.)	أسف	finally	أخيراً

### Conjugation of Verbs تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
move يتحرك	moved	shout يصرخ	shouted

#### Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
lie يرقد	lay	come يأتي	came
speak يتحدث	spoke	tell يخبر	told

### Expressions and Phrases

Please help me!	من فضلك ساعدني!	look at	يظهر إلى
Stay where you are!	ابق حيث أنت!	for as everybody knows	كما يعلم الجميع





Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

## The beginning



It's a sunny day, and Hare lies in the grass. Suddenly, her stomach makes a loud noise. Hare remembers the carrots in her kitchen. She's hungry!

إنه يوم مشمس، ولأرنبه سعادة بقدومه على العشب. فجأة، تصدر معدتها صوفاً عالياً. يتذكر الأرنبه الجزر في مطبخها. هي جائعة!

## The middle

Hare runs back home. But when she gets to her door, she stops. What is that noise? Something is moving inside Hare's house! "Is somebody there?" asks Hare. "Stay where you are!" says a loud voice. Hare is very surprised. Who is in her house? Then the voice speaks again. "Hare, don't come in. If you come in, I'll eat you. Hares are my favorite food."



Hare is very scared. The animal which is in her house wants to eat her. Hare runs to the forest where her clever friend Monkey lives.

"Monkey, please help me!" says Hare. "There's an animal in my house, and it wants to eat me!"

Monkey looks interested. "An animal? Let's go and see," Monkey says.

They go back to Hare's house. "Who's in there?" shouts Monkey.

A voice answers, "Monkey, don't come in. I'll eat you if you come in. Hares are my favorite food, but monkeys are also delicious."

هارة خائفة جداً. الحيوان الذي في منزلها يريد أن يأكلها. هارة تهرب إلى الغابة حيث يعيش صديقها القرود الذكية.

«هل يوجد أحد هناك؟» تسأل الأرنبة البرية.

«نعم، حيث أنا!» يقول صوت عالٍ.

الأرنبة البرية متعاجلة جداً، مَنْ في منزلها؟ ثم يتحدث الصوت مرة أخرى. «الأرنبة البرية، لا تدخل، إذا دخلت فسأأكلك. الأرانب البرية طعامي المفضل».

الأرنبة البرية حائفة جداً. الحيوان الذي في منزلها يريد أن يأكلها. الأرنبة البرية تركض إلى الغابة حيث تعيش صديقتها القرود الذكية.

«قرود، ساعدني أرجوك!» تقول الأرنبة البرية: «يوجد حيوان بمنزلي، ويريد أن يأكلني!».

القرود نددو مهتمة. «حيوان؟ هيا بنا نذهب ونرى» يقول القرود.

يعودون إلى منزل الأرنبة البرية. «من بالداخل؟» تصرخ القرود.

يجيب صوت، «قرود، لا تأتي. سأأكلك إذا أتيت. الأرانب البرية طعامي المفضل، ولكن القرود أيضاً لذيذة».

Monkey and Hare look at each other. They are both very scared. They run to the lake where their friend Elephant lives. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!"

"Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody can eat me!"

"We need your help!" they tell Elephant. "There's an animal which eats hares and monkeys in Hare's house," they tell Elephant. "We need your help!"

"Don't worry!" says Elephant. "I'm coming! I'm the biggest, strongest, bravest animal in the world. Nobody can eat me!"

Elephant goes to Hare's door. "I'm coming in!" he shouts.

"Stop!" says the animal inside. "I'm hungry and I love to eat ..."

"You can't eat me!" shouts Elephant. "I'm the biggest, the strongest ..."

الفيل يذهب إلى باب الأرنبة البرية. «أنا قادم!» وهو بصرخ.

حيوان يأكل الأرانب البرية والقرود في منزل الأرنبة البرية، نحن نحتاج مساعدتك!.

«لا تقلقوا» يقول الفيل. «أنا قادم! أنا الأكبر، الأقوى، أشجع حيوان في العالم. لا أحد يستطيع أن يأكلني!».

الفيل يذهب إلى باب الأرنبة البرية. «أنا قادم!» وهو بصرخ.

«توقف!» يقول الحيوان بالداخل. «أنا جائع وأحب أن أكل ...».

«لا تستطيع أن تأكلني!» تصرخ الفيل. «أنا الأكبر، الأقوى».



## The story

Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! He's very scared. For as everybody knows, elephants are afraid of mice!

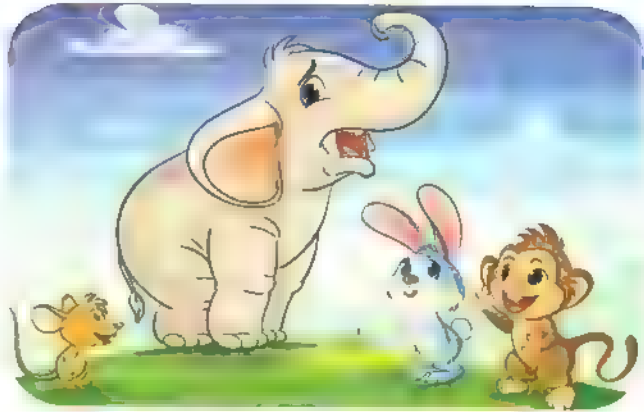
"Help! A mouse! A mouse!" cries

Elephant and he quickly runs away.

Mouse looks at Hare and Monkey. "I'm sorry," she says. "Are you angry?"

Hare and Monkey start to laugh. "No, we're not angry," they say. "Elephant's face was so funny!"

They all laugh again. Then Hare goes inside to finally eat her carrots.



فجأة، انفتح باب لارسة البرية، وبركض فر صغير لحرج. قفيل يقفز عالياً في الهواء. هو خائف جداً، فكما نعرفي الجميع، الفيلة تخاف من الفئران!

«ساعدوني! فأراً فأراً». يركي القفيل وهو يهرب بسرعة.

تنظر العائرة إلى الأرنب البرية والقردة. تقول «أنا آسفة، هل أنت غاضبة؟».

تبدأ الأرنب البرية والقردة في الضحك. تقولان: «لا، لسنا غاضبتين.» «وجه القفيل كان مضحكاً جداً!».

كلهم يضحكون مرة أخرى. ثم تذهب الأرنب البرية إلى الداخل لتأكل جزرها أخيراً.

## Check point

1 Where was the scary animal?

2 Who is on Hare's house?

SB

## Tip!

- When characters speak in stories, we show it with punctuation called **quotation marks**:

عندما نتحدث الشخصيات في القصص، نعرض ما يقولون بعلامات ترقيم تسمى علامات الاقتباس:

"Hares are my favorite food." "Don't worry!"

لارابت البرية طعمي المفضل. لا تقلق.

- We put quotation marks before and after the sentence.

نضع علامات الترقيم قبل وبعد الجملة.

- We use verbs like **say**, **shout**, and **ask** to say who is speaking.

نستخدم أفعالاً مثل: يقول، يصرخ، ويسأل لنذكر من يتحدث.

e.g. "What do you mean?" **asked** Monkey.

«ماذا تقصد؟» سأل القرد.

e.g. "I thought you were angry," **said** Mouse.

«كنت ظننتك غاضبة» قال الفار.



# Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

/N/



cut

يقطع (يقطع)



truck

عربة نقل



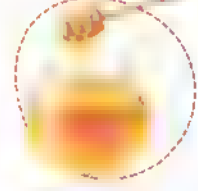
nuts

مكسرات



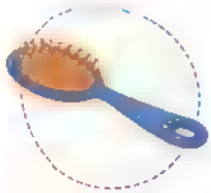
duck

بطة



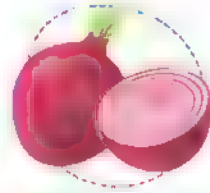
honey

عسل



brush

فرشاة



onion

بصل



hut

مخيم



bug

حشرة



stuck

عالق



uncle

عم / خال



hungry

جائع



stomach

معدة



funny

مضحك



come

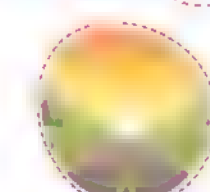
تقدم

/æ/



cat

قطه



track

مسار



happy

سعيد



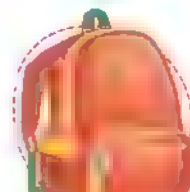
Harry

ولد اسمه هاري



hat

قبعة



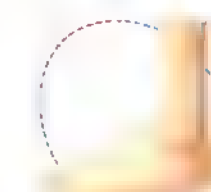
bag

حقيبة



stack

رصّة / تكديس



ankle

كاحل



animal

حيوان



angry

عاصب



## Math

### Estimating numbers الأرقام التقديرية



Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

When we don't need to calculate exactly, we estimate an approximate number. We can round decimal numbers **up or down** to the nearest whole number:

عندما لا نحتاج أن نحسب بدقة، فإننا نقدر رقمًا تقريبيًا. يمكننا تقريب الأعداد العشرية لأعلى أو أقل لأقرب رقم كامل:

1.88  $\longrightarrow$  2.00

3.12  $\longrightarrow$  3.00

**e.g.** Sara's bedroom wall needs painting. Sara calculates how much paint she needs to paint the wall. She measures the walls and writes down the measurements. Then she looks on the internet to see how many cans of paint she needs.



جدار غرفة نوم سارة يحتاج للدهان. تحسب سارة كمية الطلاء التي تحتاجه لدهان الجدران. تقيس الجدران وتكتب القياسات. ثم تنظر على الإنترنت لتعرف عدد علب الطلاء التي تحتاجها.



#### Bedroom walls measurements

Wall

= h 3.85 m  $\times$  w 8.90 m

قياسات جدران غرفة نوم

#### The answer:

To estimate how much paint she needs, Sara rounds her measurements **up** to the nearest whole number, then multiply them to estimate the area to paint:

لتقدير كمية الطلاء التي تحتاجها، تقرب سارة قياساتها إلى أقرب رقم صحيح، ثم تضربها لتقدير المساحة التي تريد طلاؤها:

3.85  $\longrightarrow$  (4.00)  $\times$  8.90  $\longrightarrow$  (9.00) = 36 m<sup>2</sup>





### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 The story is about a \_\_\_\_\_, a monkey, an elephant, and a mouse.
- 2 The \_\_\_\_\_ scared the hare and the monkey.
- 3 Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ at the end.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

**A**

- 1 I painted the walls ...
- 2 The duck is swimming ...
- 3 The nearest number to 5.65 ...
- 4 It's a sunny day, ...

**B**

- a. ( ) is 10.00.
- b. ( ) with a brush.
- c. ( ) and Hare lies in the grass.
- d. ( ) is 6.00.
- e. ( ) in the lake.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

It's a sunny day, and Hare is hungry! When she gets to her door, she hears a voice. Hare is very scared. The animal in her house tells her not to come in because he will eat her. She asks the monkey to help her. Monkey looks interested. The animal in Hare's house tells the monkey not to come in because he will eat her. Monkey and Hare are both very scared. They ask the elephant to help them. Elephant goes to Hare's door. Suddenly, Hare's door opens, and a small mouse runs out. Elephant jumps high in the air! They all laugh.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined pronoun "she" refers to the .....  
 a) mouse                      b) Hare                      c) monkey                      d) elephant
- 2 The ..... was inside the house.  
 a) mouse                      b) Hare                      c) monkey                      d) elephant

#### Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who helped Hare when she asked? .....
- 4 Why did they all laugh? .....





#### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 Harry – nuts – Happy – some – has.

.....

2 lies – grass – the – Hare – in.

.....

3 inside – house – Hare – her – a noise – hears.

.....

4 a ball – The – playing – cat – is – with.

.....

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

he drives a white, big truck

.....

#### 6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجال  
أمر الكتاب

##### “Your favorite story”

- What's the name of the story?
- What is your favorite story about?

.....

.....

.....

.....





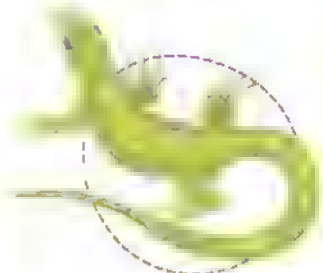
### Writing



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

### Main vocabulary



lizard

سحلية



bird

طائر



fish

سمكة



cat

قطعة

### Cats Are the Best Pets

Cats are my favorite animals and I think they make the best **pets**<sup>(1)</sup>. They are beautiful with **soft**<sup>(2)</sup> **fur**<sup>(3)</sup> which is nice to **touch**<sup>(4)</sup>. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are **independent**<sup>(5)</sup>, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. It is true that cats have **sharp** **claws** and teeth, but they only use them when they are **scared**. People also say that when you **pet** a cat, it makes you happy, so they are good for your well-being, too.



(1) حيوانات أليفة

(2) ناعم

(3) فرو

(4) يلمس

(5) مستقل

(6) حاد

(7) مخالب

(8) يدلل/يلاطف

### القطط هي أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة

القطط هي حيوانات مفضلة، وأنا أعتقد أنها أفضل الحيوانات الأليفة. إنها جميلة ولها **فرو** ناعم، وهو لطيف للمس. إنها نظيفة وهادئة، وهنّ عادةً راضيات. لكن، القطط حيوانات مستقلة، لذلك لا تحتاج إلى الخروج كل يوم. من الصحيح أن القطط لها **أظفار** حادة، لكنها تستخدمها فقط عندما تكون خائفة. يقول الناس أيضًا إنه عندما تدلل قطّة، تجعلك سعيدًا، لذا فهي جيدة لصحتك أيضًا.

### Tip!

You can use **but** to join two contrasting ideas in a sentence. For example, you can mention a negative point, then use **but** to explain why it's not really a problem.

يمكنك استخدام «لكن» لضم فكرتين متناقضتين في جملة. على سبيل المثال، يمكنك ذكر نقطة سلبية، ثم استخدام «لكن» لشرح لماذا لا يمثل ذلك مشكلة حقًا.

I like most types of fruit, **but** I don't like mangoes.

e.g.

It is true that cats have sharp claws and teeth, **but** they only use them when they are scared.

صحيح أن القطط لديها مخالب وأظفار حادة، لكنها تستخدمها فقط عندما تكون خائفة.



## Project



Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ، ولاحظ:

### Steps to make a leaflet:

خطوات إعداد منشور:

A

Make a list or draw the buildings in your school.

قم بعمل قائمة أو رسم المباني في مدرستك.

B

Include any areas where you can have meals, do sports, or relax at recess.

قم بضم أي مناطق يمكنك فيها تناول وجبة الطعام أو ممارسة الرياضة أو استرخاء في فترة الراحة.

C

Include the entrance (s) to the school and the streets around it.

قم بإضافة مدخل المدرسة والسيارات المحيطة بها.

D

Write the "key" for the map. Write the heading KEY. List the numbers and names of each building.

اكتب مفتاح «الخريطة». اكتب المفاتيح الرئيسية. وقم بعمل قائمة بالأرقام والأسماء الخاصة بكل مبنى.

E

Check the spelling, grammar, and punctuation.

تحقق من الإملاء والقواعد اللغوية وعلامات الترقيم.

F

Display your map.

اعرض خريطةك.

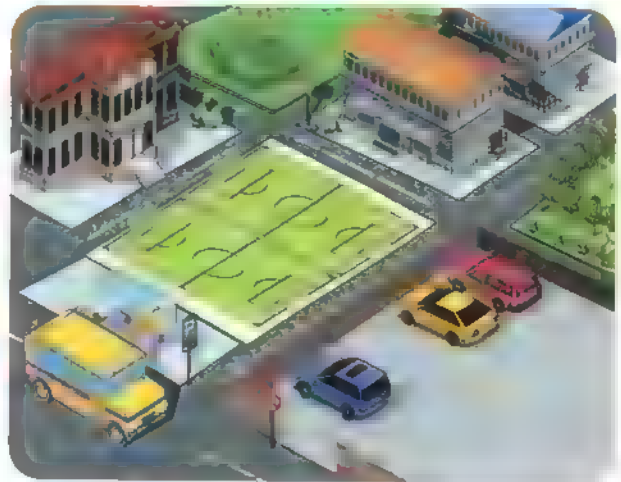
Number 1 is the Science laboratories.

We do experiments in them.

Number 2 is the Information technology building. We have our IT lessons there. It has a lot of computers and tablets in it.

Number 3 is the gymnasium where we exercise.

Number 4 is the playground where I play basketball.





### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Ola has a pet dog. ( )
- 2 Cats have soft fur which is nice to touch. ( )
- 3 You need to take them for a walk every day. ( )

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 Cats have beautiful, ...
  - 2 Cats have sharp ...
  - 3 When you pet a cat, ...
  - 4 Cats are clean and ...

- B**
- a. ( ) it makes you happy.
  - b. ( ) calm animals.
  - c. ( ) to find food for him.
  - d. ( ) soft fur.
  - e. ( ) claws and teeth.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Cats like people, ..... they are independent.  
a) and                      b) so                      c) by                      d) but
- 2 I think cats make the best .....  
a) food                      b) pets                      c) drawings                      d) toys
- 3 My new school is great, ..... it's far from my house.  
a) so                      b) and                      c) but                      d) for
- 4 Cats have beautiful, ..... fur.  
a) soft                      b) hard                      c) bad                      d) ugly





#### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 to touch – The – nice – cat's – is – fur.

.....

2 animals – Cats – calm – are – and – clean.

.....

3 animals – favorite – Cats – my – are.

.....

4 sharp – teeth – Cats – have – claws – and.

.....

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

you don t need to take them for a walk every day.

.....

#### 6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

محتاج  
أجر الكتاب

“Your favorite pet”

- What's your favorite pet?

- Why is it your favorite pet?

.....

.....

.....

.....

# Unit

## REVIEW



### Vocabulary



shy



calm



clever



polite



messy



organized



nervous

### Pronunciation

ʌ



cut



truck



nuts



duck



honey



brush



onion



hut



bug



stuck



uncle



hungry



stomach



funny



come

æ



cat



track



happy



Harry



hat



bag



stack



ankle



animal



angry

### Language Focus

#### Relative pronouns

who

We use "who" to talk about people

Mr Afifi is the teacher **who** runs the football club



which

We use "which" to talk about things

These are the shoes **which** I wear to school.



where

We use "where" to talk about places

This is the building **where** we do physical education



#### -ed adjectives

We use "-ed" adjectives to describe how people feel.

excited interested surprised bored tired

#### -ing adjectives

We use "-ing" adjectives to describe people or things that give us feelings.

exciting interesting surprising boring tiring





### Lesson 1



.....	ودود	.....	مهذب
.....	خجول	.....	فوضوى
.....	هادئ	.....	منظم
.....	ذكى	.....	متوتر

### Lesson 2



.....	مبى	.....	موقع إلكترونى
.....	صالة ألعاب رياضية	.....	ملعب
.....	خريطة	.....	معامل
.....	أدوات	.....	تجارب
.....	نافورة	.....	مقاعد
.....	رياضة بدنية	.....	التربية الرياضية

### Lesson 3



.....	معدة	.....	أنثى الأرنب البرى
.....	بحيرة	.....	غابة
.....	خائف	.....	عشب
.....	فتران	.....	الأشجع
.....	يقص/ يقطع	.....	عسل
.....	عربة نقل	.....	فرشاة
.....	مكسرات	.....	بصلة
.....	بطة	.....	قطعة
.....	طريق/ مسار	.....	سعيد

## WRITING TIME



### How to write about helping new students at school:

- My name is + اسمك and I often help new students.
- New students often feel + شعور الطلاب because + السبب
- I help them + طريقة المساعدة.



My name is Yara and I often help new students at school. New students often feel nervous and shy because it's their first day at school. I show them around the school. I sometimes stay with them at the break, too. When they don't have their textbooks, I share my books with them.

### How to write about a place which you are proud of:

- Welcome to (اسم المكان), a place which we are proud of.
- (وصف المكان) is (اسم المبنى) ....
- (وصف المكان) is (اسم مبنى آخر) ....
- We use it for (استخدامات المكان) ....



Welcome to El Fouad School, a place which we are proud of. The Ahmed Zewail Building is the place where students study science. The West Court is a large open area where students have recess. The 2024 Gym is our new gymnasium. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during physical education lessons.

### How to write about your favorite pet:

- I like (اسم الحيوان).
- I think + (صفة ماهرة لهذا الحيوان).
- They are (صفة أخرى مميزة لهذا الحيوان) ....



I like cats. They're my favorite animals. I think they make the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur. They are clean and calm. They're also independent. I don't have to take it for a walk every day.





**1 Match the words to their meanings:**

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| 1 friendly  | a. not tidy or organized                         |
| 2 shy       | b. nice to others, helpful                       |
| 3 clever    | c. tidy, careful                                 |
| 4 polite    | d. intelligent, good at school work              |
| 5 messy     | e. not calm, worried                             |
| 6 organized | f. worried about talking to people, quiet        |
| 7 nervous   | g. speaks carefully and correctly, shows respect |

**2 Complete the sentences with who, which, or where:**

- 1 Dalia is the girl ..... sits next to me in the English class.
- 2 An ostrich is a big bird ..... can't fly.
- 3 This is the street ..... my uncle lives.
- 4 I really love the red flowers ..... grow in our garden.
- 5 The supermarket is the place ..... we buy food.

**3 Choose the correct adjective to complete the sentence:**

- 1 Hi Fareeda, I'm (surprised – surprising) to see you!
- 2 The children feel (bored – boring) when there is nothing to do.
- 3 His birthday party was (excited – exciting).
- 4 I'm really (interested – interesting) in Ancient Egypt.
- 5 I was really (tired – tiring) last night.
- 6 The results of the students' last test are (surprised – surprising) .

# Practice More

## Unit 2



أسئلة إضافية مؤلفة للتدريب طبقاً لما ورد بكتاب الوزارة

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

which – where – what – who

I'm Adam. This is my school. This is ..... I learn. These are my books. They are the books ..... I read and study from. This is Mr. Ahmed. He's the person ..... runs the school. This is the playground. This is where I play with my friends and eat my sandwiches.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The movie was .....  
a) interested      b) excited      c) exciting      d) tired
- 2 This is the street ..... I ride my bike.  
a) where      b) which      c) when      d) who
- 3 I'm ..... to see my cousins here.  
a) surprising      b) surprised      c) tiring      d) excited
- 4 This is the baker ..... made the cake.  
a) who      b) where      c) what      d) which

### 3 Correct the underlined words:

- 1 This is the shirt what I wear to work. ( ..... )
- 2 I'm tiring. I can't go to the club. ( ..... )
- 3 The book was bored. I didn't finish it. ( ..... )
- 4 Dalia is polite and clever, for she isn't friendly. ( ..... )





### Listening

#### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 The 2024 Gymnasium is the yellow building. ( )
- 2 There are some students who run after school sports clubs. ( )
- 3 Mr Afifi is a math teacher. ( )

#### 2 Listen and complete:

- 1 Amira has a pet .....
- 2 Cats are beautiful, clean, and .....
- 3 Cats are ....., I don't need to take my cat for a walk.



### Reading

#### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My sister's birthday is today. She's very .....  
a) exciting                      b) interested                      c) excited                      d) boring
- 2 These are the shoes ..... I wear to play football.  
a) who                      b) which                      c) how                      d) where
- 3 My mother is very ..... She's very nice to others.  
a) clever                      b) nervous                      c) shy                      d) friendly
- 4 My uncle drives a big, white .....  
a) truck                      b) cut                      c) track                      d) stack

#### 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

**A**

- 1 The gymnasium is where ...
- 2 Cats are independent animals.
- 3 The TV show ...
- 4 My brother is really clever.

**B**

- a. ( ) You don't need to take them for a walk every day.
- b. ( ) very relaxed.
- c. ( ) He's intelligent and good at school work.
- d. ( ) we do physical education.
- e. ( ) is really interesting.

## 5 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Lama. I'm in grade six. I love my school. My school has many new, modern buildings. There's The Ahmed Zewail Building. This is the place where we study science. There are four classrooms and two laboratories in that building. There is also The West Court. It's a large open area where students can spend time outside. Here are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain. We have a new gymnasium, we use it for basketball, handball and gymnastics during physical education lessons. I always enjoy my day at school.

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Lama's school is .....  
a) ancient      b) old      c) small      d) modern
- The underlined word "Court" means .....  
a) classroom      b) house      c) park      d) playground

### Answer the following questions:

- How many laboratories are there in the school? .....
- Summarize the passage in two sentences. ....



### Writing

## 6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- to do – This is – where – experiments – learn – I. ....
- Salma – tidy – is – organized – or – not. ....
- tired – My – was – father – yesterday – really. ....
- are – sit on – There – benches – the trees – to – under. ....

## 7 Punctuate the following:

nadine is kind and friendly

## 8 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

محبوب  
أفكر الكتاب

"Your school"

new and modern – West court

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

Well done!







## Listening

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 I sometimes help my aunt at the community garden. ( )
- 2 The community garden is a small green space. ( )
- 3 Lots of people offer to help us. ( )

### 2 Listen and complete:

- 1 Ola ..... new students at her school.
- 2 Ali was very ..... and shy.
- 3 Hana helped Ali to stay calm because they're all .....



## Reading

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 These are my gloves ..... I wear to work.  
a) who                      b) when                      c) which                      d) where
- 2 We usually ..... tomatoes, peppers, onions, and lettuce.  
a) plant                      b) make                      c) play                      d) had
- 3 Omar is intelligent and good at school work. He's very .....  
a) calm                      b) nervous                      c) polite                      d) clever
- 4 I always eat healthy food. I ..... eat pizza.  
a) never                      b) sometimes                      c) often                      d) occasionally

### 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

- 1 The movie was ...
- 2 Hani is very polite.
- 3 My uncle drives a ...
- 4 A: How often do you ride your bike?

B

- a. ( ) big, white truck.
- b. ( ) really interesting.
- c. ( ) B I sometimes ride my bike.
- d. ( ) not calm, worried.
- e. ( ) He shows respect to everyone.

### 5 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Salma. I moved to a new city with a new school. I was very nervous and shy on the first day at school, but I met Lara. She helped me get to know the school. She took me around the school and showed me where my classrooms are. She also stayed with

me at the break. She helped me get the books and the worksheets I need. She's a very kind person. Now I feel happy and I love my new school.

### Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Salma moved to a new city with a new .....  
 a) job                      b) school                      c) sport                      d) hospital
- 2 Lara ..... with me at the break.  
 a) stayed                      b) sang                      c) taught                      d) knew

### Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did Lara help Salma? .....
- 4 How does Salma feel now? .....



### Writing

#### 6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 share – We – book – today – my – can. ....
- 2 noise – a loud – stomach – Her – makes. ....
- 3 garden – selfish – I – was – about – my. ....
- 4 look – over – the – We – after – forests – time. ....

#### 7 Punctuate the following:

how often do you cook dinner

.....

#### 8 Write an email of about 50–60 words to your friend telling him about your community garden:

محبوبه  
[غير لکتی]

From	:	.....
To	:	.....
Subject	:	.....
<p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p> <p>.....</p>		

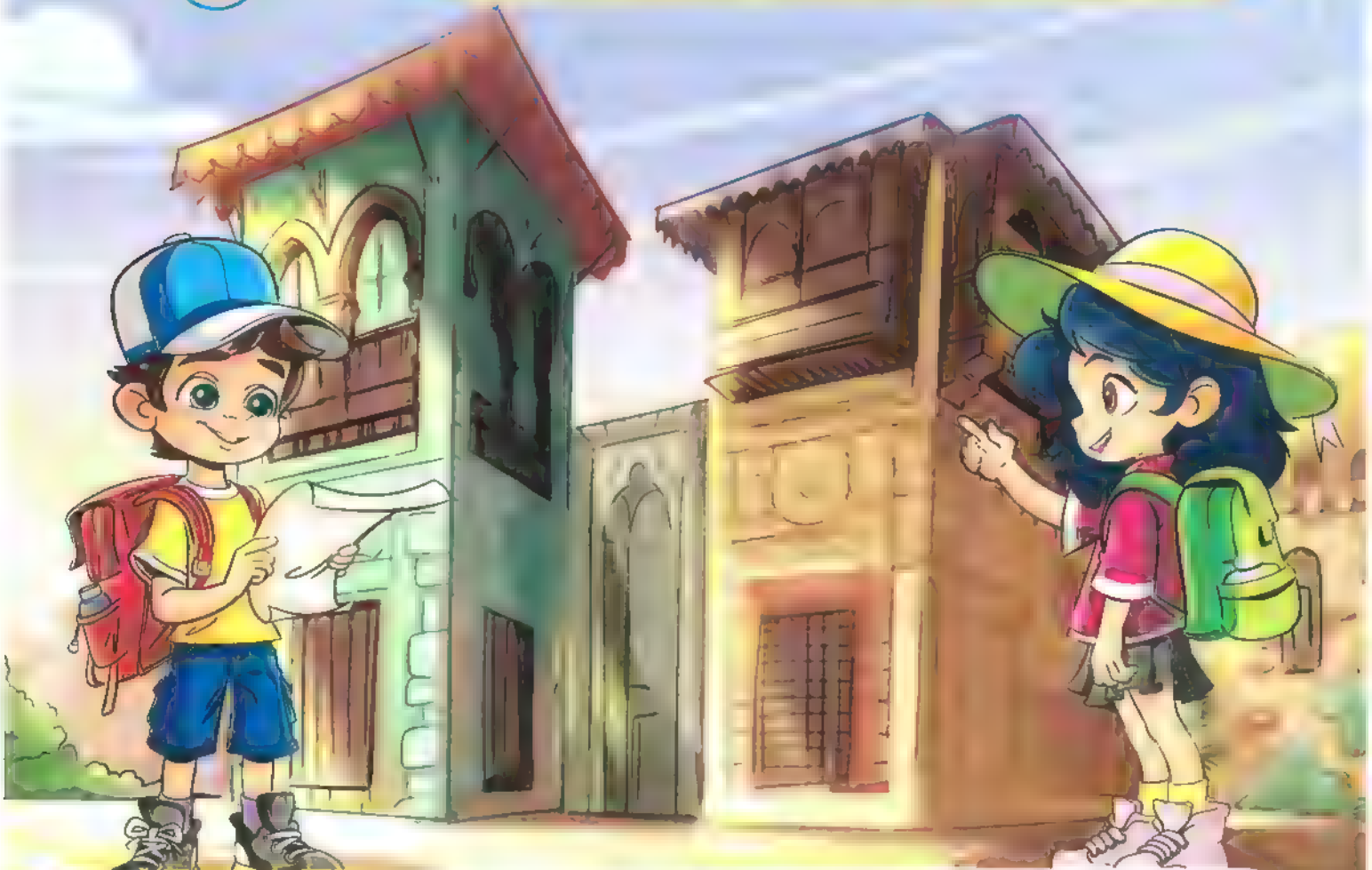


# Unit

3

## Vacation plans

خطط لقضاء العطلة



### Unit Overview

Student's book  
Exercises



Practice  
More



Answers  
100%



- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, research, and write about making vacation plans.  
talk about facts using clauses with "if" or "when".  
talk about when something happens using prepositions of time.  
read and listen to determine the central message.  
practice saying the initial consonant sounds /w/ and /v/.  
write a blog about a place he/she likes visiting.  
research and make a brochure about a vacation destination.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

يسمع، يقرأ، يبحث ويكتب عن خطط لقضاء العطلة.

يتحدث عن تحقيق باستخدام عبارات مثل "if" و "when".

يتحدث عن متى يحدث شيء ما باستخدام حروف زمنية.

يقرأ ويسمع لتحديد الفكرة الأساسية المقروءة.

يتدرب على نطق الحروف الساكنة في بداية الكلمة مثل /w/ و /v/.

يكتب مدونة عن مكان يحب زيارته.

يبحث ويقوم بعمل بحث عن وجهات عطلة.

### Check your knowledge

When you see it from the air, the Nile Valley is in the shape of a fan. In the north, where it opens into the delta, it is wide. In the south, where it passes between desert \*cliffs, it is narrow.

### Think about it now

If we see Egypt from the air, we can see Delta. It's a big green area. Brown areas are deserts. There are many cities in Egypt like Cairo, Alexandria, Port Said, Aswan, and Luxor.

\*cliffs

منحدرات



### Let's go quad biking on Tuesday

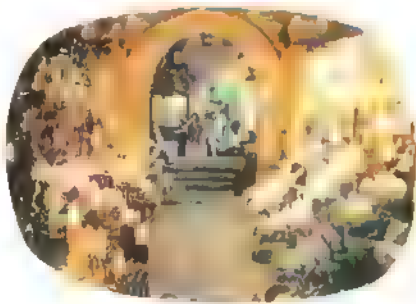
دعنا نركب الدراجات الرباعية يوم الثلاثاء



Listen, point, and say:

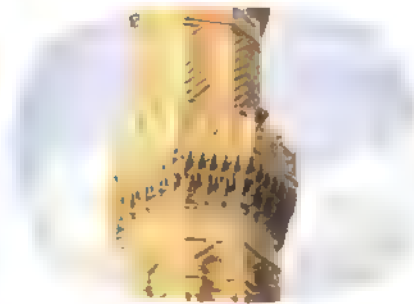
استمع، أشر وقل:

### Main vocabulary



explore the souks

يستكشف الأسواق



climb the Bab Zuweila minaret

يتسلق (يصعد إلى) مئذنة باب زويلة



take photos for the school project

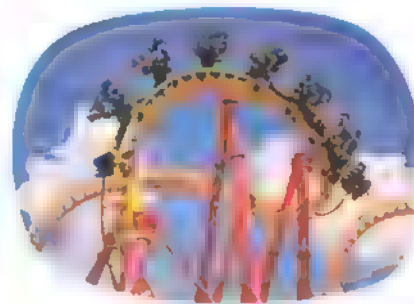
يلتقط صورًا من أجل

مشروع مدرسي



go quad biking in the desert

يركب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء



ride on a rollercoaster

يركب قطار الملاهي



visit the Manial Palace Museum

بزور متحف قصر المنيل



Let's say it right!

⬢ لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ph) في كلمة (photo) ينطقان (ف) /f/.

⬢ لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ua) في كلمة (quad) ينطقان /wa/.



## Extra vocabulary

excited (adj.)	متحمس	vacation	عطلة	places	أماكن
theme park	مدينة الملاهي	outside	بالخارج	interesting (adj.)	شيق / مثير للاهتمام
desert	صحراء	Giza	الجيزة	late afternoon	في وقت متأخر من الظهيرة
sunset	الغروب	near	قريب/بالقرب من		

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
try	يجرب	tried	travel	يسافر	traveled
love	يحب	loved	arrive	يصل	arrived
watch	يشاهد / يراقب	watched	explore	يستكشف	explored

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	take	يأخذ	took
ride	يركب	rode	come	يأتي	came

## Expressions and Phrases

Why don't we try ...?	لماذا لا نجرب ...؟	look interesting	يبدو مثيرًا للاهتمام
Like what?	مثل ماذا؟	take the bus	يستقل الأتوبيس
over the city	فوق المدينة (يغطي المدينة)	come back to	يعود إلى
What else ...?	ماذا أيضًا ...؟	here we come	إننا قادمون

## Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- Let's (take – explore – climb – go) the souks on Sunday.
- I can (take – arrive – go – visit) the Manial Palace Museum.
- I will spend my summer (match – vacation – wedding – birthday) in Aswan.
- I think he (gets – takes – goes – explores) the bus to work.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Samer

I'm excited about our vacation this week, Basel.

أنا متحمس بشأن عطلتنا هذا الأسبوع يا باسل.

Me too! Why don't we try new places. We can travel to Cairo.  
There are lots to see there.

أنا أيضًا! لماذا لا نحرب أماكن جديدة. يمكننا السفر إلى القاهرة. يوجد الكثير لرؤيته هناك.

Basel





Samer

Yes. We can visit the Manial Palace Museum first. If we go to the museum on Sunday, on Monday we can take photos for my school project.

نعم، يمكننا زيارة متحف قصر المنيل أولاً. إذا قمنا بزيارة المتحف يوم الأحد، يوم الإثنين يمكننا التقاط صور لمشروع المدرسي.

Basel



Okay, cool! My Mom can go with us. She loves museums. Let's also go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster!

حسنًا رائع! يمكن لأمي المجيء معنا. هي تحب المتاحف. دعنا نذهب أيضًا إلى مدينة الملاهي ونركب قطار الملاهي!



Samer

Okay! Let's do that on Tuesday. There are also some places outside Cairo that look interesting.

حسنًا! دعنا نفعل ذلك يوم الثلاثاء. هناك أيضًا بعض الأماكن خارج القاهرة التي تبدو مثيرة للاهتمام.

Basel



Like what?

مثل ماذا؟



Samer

We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza. If we take the bus, we will arrive in about 30 minutes.

يمكننا ركوب الدراجات الرباعية في صحراء الجيزة. إذا استقللنا الباص، فسنصل بعد حوالي ٣٠ دقيقة.

Basel



Great! We can go early on Wednesday and come back to the hotel before evening.

Yes. What else we can do?

عظيم! يمكننا الذهاب باكراً يوم الأربعاء ونعود للقندق قبل المساء.

نعم. ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل أيضاً؟



Samer

Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Thursday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. If we go there in the late afternoon, we can watch the sunset over the city.

دعنا نصعد إلى مئذنة باب زويلة يوم الخميس. إنه صعب، لكن المنظر من الأعلى جميل. إذا ذهبنا في وقت الظهر متأخرًا، يمكننا أن نشاهد الغروب فوق المدينة.

Basel



Cool. And in the morning, we can explore the Souks! They're near the Minaret.

رائع. ويمكننا استكشاف الأسواق في الصباح. إنها قريبة من المئذنة.



Samer

Great! Cairo here we come!

عظيم! القاهرة، إنا قادمون!

## Language Notes

### Making suggestions:

### تقديم الاقتراحات:

Why don't we + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...?

e.g. Why don't we try new places?

لماذا لا نجرب أماكن جديدة؟

Let's + (inf.) مصدر الفعل ...

e.g. Let's go to the museum on Monday!

دعنا نذهب إلى المتحف يوم الاثنين.

لنرد على الاقتراح يمكن استخدام عبارات مثل:

Good idea! / Okay, cool! / That sounds amazing. / Great!





### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Reem wants to visit the Manial Palace ..... on Monday.
- 2 They will ride on a ..... on Tuesday.
- 3 They can go quad ..... in the desert in Giza.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 Let's climb the Bab Zuweila minaret.
  - 2 Let's go to the theme park ...
  - 3 Why don't we ...
  - 4 If we take the bus, ...

- B**
- a. ( ) and ride on a rollercoaster!
  - b. ( ) we will arrive in 30 minutes.
  - c. ( ) B: That sounds amazing.
  - d. ( ) The view from the top is beautiful.
  - e. ( ) try new places?

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ali will spend his summer vacation in Cairo with his cousin Amir. They think about trying some new places. They want to visit the Manial Palace Museum on Saturday. They will take photos for their school project. Ali wants to visit Cairo Tower on Monday. Amir wants to climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Tuesday. They want to explore the souks on Wednesday. They want to ride on a rollercoaster in a theme park in Giza on Thursday. If they take the bus there, they will arrive in about 30 minutes. Ali will return home on Friday.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "vacation" means .....  
 a) project      b) holiday      c) medicine      d) place
- 2 Ali's vacation will be for ..... days.  
 a) two      b) six      c) seven      d) ten

**Answer the following questions:**

3 What does Amir want to do on Tuesday?

4 Summarize the main idea of the text in two sentences.



**Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

1 Monday – What – we – can – do – on?

2 can – explore – in – We – the morning – the – souks!

3 don't – Why – try – new – we – places?

4 visit – We – the – Manial – first – can – Museum – Palace.



**Punctuate the following:**

we can go squad biking in giza.



**Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

أخبر كتابك  
عن

**“My summer vacation”**

– Where do you want to go?

– What places do you want to try?



**If we book the tour today, it's cheaper.**  
إذا حجزنا الجولة اليوم، فستكون أرخص



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

### Main vocabulary

discount	خصم	company	شركة
adventures	مغامرات	guide	مرشد سياحي
bank details	تفاصيل بنكية	button	زر
credit card	بطاقة ائتمان	dust	غبار
free (adj.)/(adv.)	مجاناً/مجانيًا	freezer	المجمد (الفریزر)
properly	بطريقة ملائمة	dictionary	قاموس
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي		

### Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
decide	يقرر	decided		last	يدوم	lasted
book	يحجز	booked		suggest	يقترح	suggested
press	يضغط	pressed		heat	يسخن	heated
melt	يذوب	melted		study	يدرس	studied
try	يحاول	tried		block	يحجب / يمنع	blocked
die	يموت	died				

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met		feel	يشعر	felt
mean	يقصد	meant		tell	يخبر	told

### Expressions and Phrases

is called	يُدعى	be in a group of	يكون في مجموعة
get better	يتحسن	turn on	يشغل جهازًا
stay safe	يبقى بأمان	look up	يبحث عن كلمة في القاموس
turn (the music) down	يخفض صوت الموسيقى		

## Language Focus

## If/When (Zero Conditional)

We use clauses with "if/when" plus present tense verbs, or a modal verb like "can" to talk about facts or things that are usually true.

نستخدم "if/when" مع صيغ الحاضر البسيطة أو صيغ الحاضر البسيطة مع "can" لمناقشة الحقائق أو الأشياء التي تكون عادة صحيحة.

## Form

If/When + subject + present simple,

subject + present simple ...

subject + can + (inf) ...



If we go by bus, it is quicker.

إذا ذهبنا بالأتوبيس، فسنصل أسرع.



When you go there in the late afternoon, you can watch the sunset.

عندما تذهب إلى هناك في وقت متأخر من بعد الظهر، يمكنك مشاهدة غروب الشمس.

The clause with "if/when" can come at the start of the sentence, or at the end. When it comes first, we separate the two clauses with a comma.

- يمكن أن تأتي العبارة المصحوبة بـ «if/when» في بداية الجملة أو نهايتها. إذا جاءت في بداية الجملة نستخدم لفصل بين العبارتين.

e.g. If you press the button, the tablet switches off.  
The tablet switches off if you press the button.

In questions, the clause with if/when usually comes at the end.

العبارات المصحوبة بـ «if/when» عادة تأتي في نهاية السؤال.

e.g. How can we get to Giza if we miss the bus?

## Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 If you put water in the freezer, it (freezes – freeze – froze – freezing).
- 2 When you heat sugar, it (met – me ts – me t ng – me ted).
- 3 I (getting – gets – got – get) a stomach ache if I eat too much cake.





Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Study for about 30 minutes but **no longer**<sup>(1)</sup>.

If you try to study **for hours**<sup>(2)</sup> without a break, you can't **concentrate**<sup>(3)</sup>. When you have **regular breaks**<sup>(4)</sup>, you **remember**<sup>(5)</sup> more. It's also **better** to study at the same time each day, even on Fridays or Saturdays. People's **brains**<sup>(6)</sup> work better if they have a regular routine.



Also, don't study when you're hungry! If you eat a **healthy meal**<sup>7</sup> at **lunchtime**<sup>8</sup>, you can concentrate better in the afternoon. It's **helpful** if you **write down**<sup>9</sup> a list of what you want to do each time you study. Then you can **check it off**<sup>10</sup> the list when you finish studying and **feel proud**<sup>(11)</sup>!



- |      |                   |
|------|-------------------|
| (1)  | ليس أكثر          |
| (2)  | لعدة ساعات        |
| (3)  | يركز              |
| (4)  | فترات راحة منتظمة |
| (5)  | يتذكر             |
| (6)  | عقول              |
| (7)  | وجبة صحية         |
| (8)  | وقت العشاء        |
| (9)  | تدون              |
| (10) | يتحقق منها        |
| (11) | تشعر بالفخر       |

ادرس لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة ولكن ليس أكثر. إذا حاولت أن تذاكر لساعات بدون فاصل ، فلن تستطيع التركيز، عندما تحصل عل فترات راحة منتظمة، تتمكن من التذكر أكثر. يفضل أيضًا أن تذاكر في نفس الوقت كل يوم حتى في أيام الجمعة والسبت. تعمل عقول البشر بشكل أفضل إذا كان لديها روتين يومي منتظم. أيضًا ، لا تذاكر وأنت جائع! إذا كنت تأكل وجبة صحية في وقت الغداء، يمكنك التركيز بشكل أفضل في فترة ما بعد الظهر. من المفيد أن تكتب قائمة بما تريد إنجازه في كل مرة تذاكر فيها. ثم تقوم بالتحقق من هذه القائمة عندما تنتهي من المذاكرة لتشعر بالفخر.

### Check point

1 How long should a student study?

.....

2 Why is it better to study at the same time each day?

.....

## Language Focus

Prepositions of time  
حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

We use prepositions of time **at**, **on**, and **in**, to say when something happens.

نستخدم حروف الجر **at**, **on**, و **in** للمحدث عن وقت حدوث شيء.

**at**

with times:

**at** midnight**at** four o'clock

مع الأوقات

**at** lunchtime

I have breakfast **at** 7 o'clock.

أتناول وجبة الإفطار الساعة السابعة.

**on**

with days and dates:

**on** Monday**on** my birthday

مع الأيام والتواريخ

**on** April 13<sup>th</sup>

My birthday is **on** April 24<sup>th</sup>.

عيد ميلادي في الـ ٢٤ من شهر إبريل.

**in**

with months, seasons, and years:

**in** May**in** winter

مع الشهور، فصول السنة والسنوات

**in** 2004

I go to Paris **in** winter.

أذهب إلى باريس في فصل الشتاء.



- We use "When" to ask about time/certain event.

نستخدم «When» للسؤال عن الوقت وعن حدث معين.

e.g. A: When do you get up?

B: I get up **at** six o'clock.

e.g. A: When is your birthday?

B: My birthday is **on** June 13<sup>th</sup>.

## Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- I study science (of – at – on – in) six o'clock.
- I go to Aswan (in – on – at – up) March.
- My birthday is (on – in – at – to) June 7<sup>th</sup>.



### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Study for about ..... minutes but no longer.
- 2 If you try to study for hours, you can't .....
- 3 It's better to study at the same ..... each day.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

**A**

- 1 Plants die ...
- 2 What happens when you ...
- 3 How can we get to Giza ...
- 4 I'm having a party ...

**B**

- a. ( ) on my birthday.
- b. ( ) if we miss the bus?
- c. ( ) if you don't water them.
- d. ( ) if you don't use the remote control.
- e. ( ) block a person on social media?

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I can't study if the music ..... too loud.  
a) was                      b) is                      c) are                      d) were
- 2 When do you get up ..... Fridays?  
a) at                      b) with                      c) on                      d) in
- 3 When you ..... regular breaks, you remember more.  
a) has                      b) had                      c) having                      d) have
- 4 I do my homework ..... five o'clock.  
a) in                      b) at                      c) on                      d) for

**4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

1 study – Don't – hungry – when – are – you.

.....

2 had – class – Monday – on – We – science – a.

.....

3 heat – melts – If – it – sugar, – you.

.....

4 buy – two T-shirts – you – free – get – one – When – you.

SB

.....

**5 Punctuate the following:**

noha was born on may 17<sup>th</sup>.

.....

**6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

مجاب عنه  
آخر الكتاب

“What are your top tips for studying?”

· study for about 30 minutes – have regular breaks ·

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....





### Fatima faces her fear

فاطيمة تواجه خوفها



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

### Main vocabulary

fear	خوف	teenage	سن المراهقة	view	منظر
heights	ارتفاعات	sunset	عروب	scared (adj.)	خائف

### Extra vocabulary

typical (adj.)	عادي	monument	أثر	cousin	ابن عم / بنت عم
famous (adj.)	مشهور	dome	قبة	hill	تل
secret	سر	incredible (adj.)	لا يصدق	calmer (adj.)	أكثر هدوءًا

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present		Past
face	يواجه	faced
disappoint	يحبط	disappointed
smile	يتسم	smiled
lift	يرفع	lifted

#### Irregular verbs

Present		Past
say	يتكلم / يقول	said

#### أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
decide	يقرر	decided
reach	يصل	reached
breathe	يتنفس	breathed
suggest	يقترح	suggested

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
feel	يشعر	felt

### Expressions and Phrases

climb up the hill	يتسلق التل	afraid of	خائف من
That's a good idea.	إنها فكرة جيدة.	(someone's) face is white	أصبح وجهه شاحبًا
look around	ينظر حوله	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر

### Tip!

Pictures can help you understand what a story is about and give you extra detail. For example, the background can show you where the action happens, and the faces of the characters can tell you how they feel at that moment.

يمكن أن تساعدك الصور على فهم ما تدور حوله القصة وتعطيك تفاصيل إضافية، على سبيل المثال، يمكن أن تظهر الحلفية مكان الأحداث ويمكن أن تدل وجوه الشخصيات على إحساسهم في تلك اللحظة.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

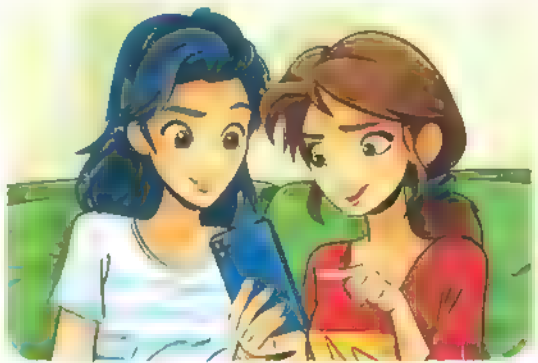
Fatima's favorite cousin Amal comes to visit her. It is Amal's first time in Aswan. She's very excited. She wants to see all the famous places.

فاطمة تفضل زيارتها. أمال تأتي لزيارتها لأول مرة. أمال سعيدة جداً لأنها ستتمكن من رؤية جميع الأماكن المشهورة في أسوان.



Amal shows Fatima a photo. "Can we go visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa? We can climb up the hill to it – there's a great view from there!"

أعرض أمال صورة على فاطمة. «هل يمكننا الذهاب لزيارة قبة أبو الهوى؟ يمكننا تسلق التل لتصعد إليها، يوجد منظر رائع من هناك!»



Fatima doesn't know what to say. She wants to make Amal happy, but she has a secret: she is afraid of heights. How can she climb up the hill to the dome?

لا تعرف فاطمة ماذا تقول. تريد أن تجعل أمال سعيدة. لكن لديها سر: هي خائفة من الارتفاعات. كيف تستطيع هي أن تسلق التل لتصعد للقبة؟



Fatima doesn't want to disappoint her cousin, so she decides to face her fear. "That's a good idea," she says, "Let's go on Tuesday in the afternoon. We can watch the sunset."

لا تريد فاطيمة أن تحزن ابنة عمها، لذلك قررت أن تواجه خوفها. تقول فاطيمة «إنها فكرة جيدة». «لنذهب يوم الثلاثاء وقت الظهر. يمكننا أن نشاهد الغروب».



It's Tuesday and the girls are at the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima's face is white. She is very scared. But Amal takes her hand and smiles. "Breathe slowly," she says. "You can do this, Fatima. Now look around you."

إنه الثلاثاء والفتيات عند قمة أبو الهوى. بعد صعود استمر طويلاً، تمكنتا من الوصول للقمة. وجه فاطيمة شاحب، هي خائفة جداً. تأخذ أمل يدها وتبتسم وتقول «تفسي ببطء». «يمكنك فعل ذلك يا فاطيمة، الآن انظري حولك».



Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the view. It is incredible. Suddenly she doesn't feel scared any more. She feels proud to live in such a fantastic place!

تشعر فاطيمة بالارتياح. ترفع رأسها لترى المنظر. كان منظرًا جميلًا لا يصدق. لم تعد تشعر بالخوف فجأة. هي تشعر بالفخر لأنها تعيش في مكان رائع كهذا.



### Check point

1 Where does Amal want to go?

.....

2 Why is Fatima not sure about the visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa?

.....



# Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

## Main vocabulary

deer	غزال	forest	غابة
wolf	ذئب	bear	دب
stream	مجرى ماء	fox	ثعلب

## Extra vocabulary

lake	بحيرة	drink	شربة ماء
river	نهر	cool (adj.)	بارد
clear (adj.)	نقى	puddle	بركة
thirsty (adj.)	عطشان	afraid (adj.)	حائف
brave (adj.)	شجاع	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ
proud (adj.)	فخور		

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
stop	يتوقف	stopped	want	يريد	wanted
sparkle	يلمع	sparkled	watch	يراقب	watched

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
run	يجرى	ran	come	يأتى	came
drink	يشرب	drank	see	يرى	saw
feel	يشعر	felt			

## Expressions and Phrases

run through	يجرى عبر	stop for a drink	يتوقف لأجل الشرب
the same lake as	نفس البحيرة	has a drink from	يتناول شربة ماء من
sparkle in the sun	يلمع في الشمس		



## Little Deer in the forest

## الغزال الصغير في الغابة



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

## The beginning

Little Deer runs through the forest<sup>(1)</sup>. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and he decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf<sup>2</sup>. Wolf has a drink from the lake. "Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same lake as Wolf. Wolf wants to eat me!"

Little Deer runs on through<sup>(3)</sup> the forest. Next, he comes to a river. The river is cool and clear. But as Little Deer goes to drink from it, he sees Bear. Bear has a drink from the river.

"Oh no!" says Little Deer. "I can't drink from the same river as Bear. Bear wants to eat me!"



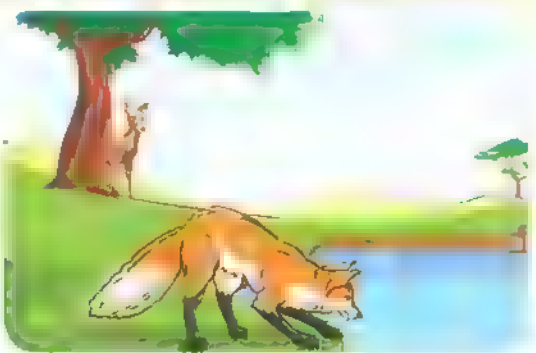
الغزال الصغير يمر عبر الغابة، يأتي إلى بحيرة زرقاء جميلة ويقرر التوقف لشرب الماء. وبعد ذلك، يرى الذئب، الذئب يشرب من البحيرة. «لا!» يقول الغزال الصغير. «لا يمكنني الشرب من نفس بحيرة الذئب، الذئب يريد أن يأكلني!»  
الغزال الصغير يمر عبر الغابة، بعد ذلك، يأتي إلى النهر، النهر بارد ومياهه نقية ولكن عندما يذهب الغزال الصغير للشرب منه، يرى الدب، يحمل الدب مشروباً من النهر. «لا!» يقول الغزال الصغير. «لا يمكنني الشرب من نفس نهر الدب، الدب يريد أن يأكلني!»

- (1) غابة  
(2) ذئب  
(3) يجري خلال

## The middle

Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a small stream<sup>(4)</sup>. The stream sparkles<sup>(5)</sup> in the sun. "Finally!" he says. "I can have a... Oh no!" Little Deer sees Fox. "I can't drink from the same stream as Fox. Fox wants to eat me!"

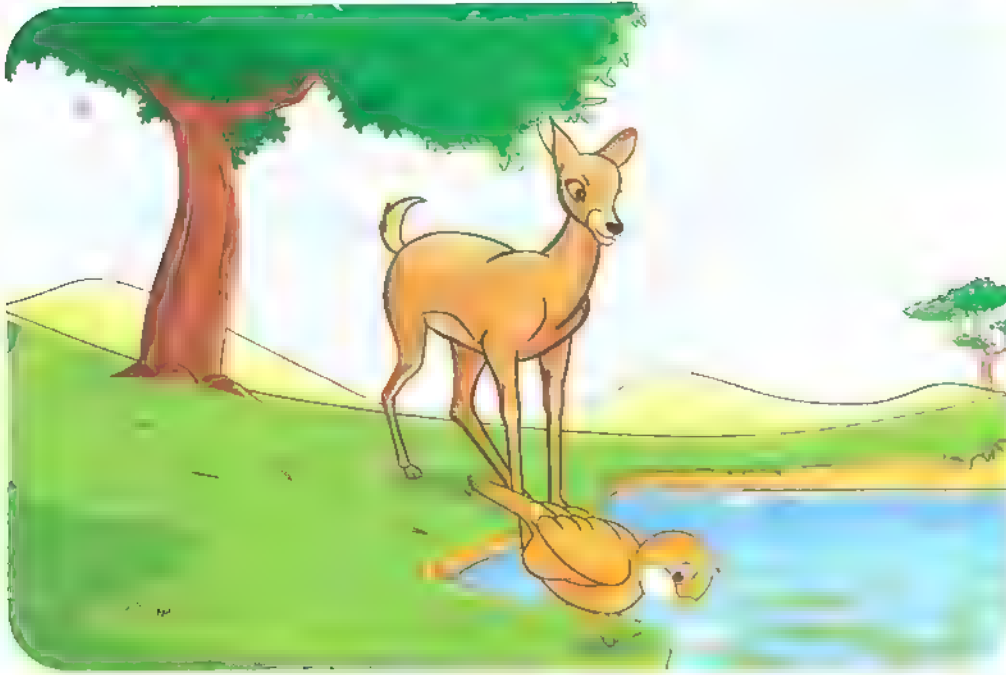
Little Deer runs on through the forest. He comes to a large puddle<sup>(6)</sup>. It isn't blue like the lake. It isn't cool and clear like the river. And it doesn't sparkle like the stream. But Little Deer is very thirsty now!



الغزال الصغير يمر عبر الغابة، يأتي إلى تيار صغير، يلمع التيار في الشمس. «أخيراً!» يقول: «يمكنني أن أحصل على... أوه لا!» الغزال الصغير يرى الثعلب. «لا أستطيع الشرب من نفس تيار الثعلب، الثعلب يريد أن يأكلني!»  
الغزال الصغير يمر عبر الغابة، يأتي إلى بركة كبيرة. إنها ليست زرقاء مثل البحيرة وليست باردة ونقية مثل النهر ولا تلمع مثل التيار. لكن الغزال الصغير الآن يشعر بالعطش!

- (4) مجرى ماء  
(5) يلمع  
(6) بركة

## The end



- (7) خائف
- (8) جميل
- (9) لذيذ
- (10) فخور

Just then, Little Deer sees Little Bird. Little Bird sees Little Deer, too, but she isn't **afraid**. Little Bird has a drink from the puddle.

Little Deer watches Little Bird. "Hmm," he thinks. "If Little Bird can be brave, I can be brave, too!"

Little Deer goes back to the **beautiful**, blue lake. He sees Wolf, Bear, and Fox. But this time, Little Deer goes to the lake and has a drink. It is **delicious**! Little Deer feels happy and **proud** <sup>(10)</sup>.

وبعد ذلك، يرى الغزال الصغير الطائر الصغير. الطائر الصغير يرى الغزال الصغير خائفًا، ولكنه ليس خائفًا أيضًا. الطائر الصغير يشرب من بركة.

يراقب الغزال الصغير الطائر الصغير، و يفكر، «إذا كان الطائر الصغير يمكن أن يكون شجاعًا فممكن أن أكون شجاعًا أيضًا!».

يعود الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة الزرقاء الجميلة. يرى الذئب والذئب والشعبي. ولكن هذه المرة، يذهب الغزال الصغير إلى البحيرة ويشرب. إنه لذيذ! الغزال الصغير يشعر بالسعادة والفخر.

## Check point

1 How does the river look like?

2 What does Little Deer think when he sees the bird?

SB



## Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

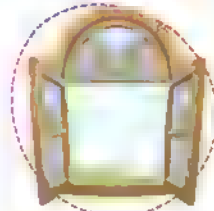
/w/



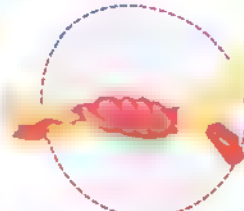
water مياه



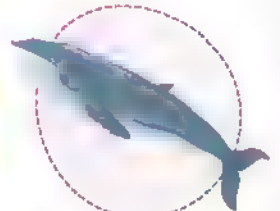
wolf ذئب



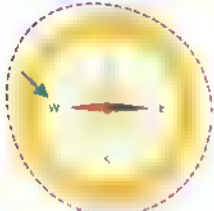
window شباك



wet مبتل



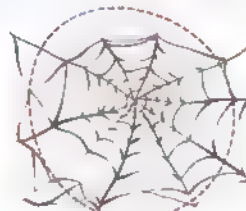
whale حوت



west غرب



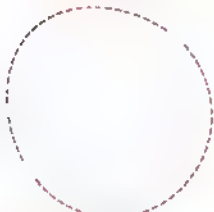
walk يمشي



web شبكة عنكبوت



worm دودة



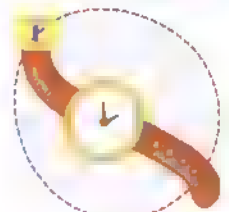
white أبيض



went ذهب



wear يرتدي

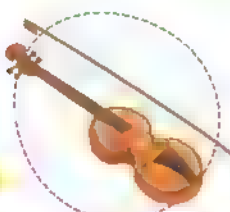


watch ساعة يد

/v/



volcano بركان



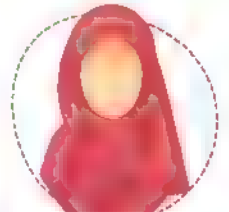
violin كمان



vegetables خضراوات



vet طبيب بيطري



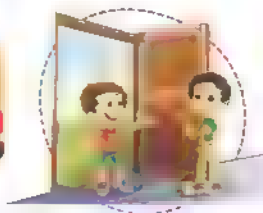
eil حجاب



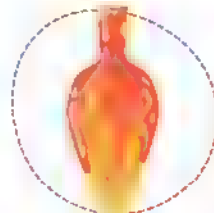
vest ستر



van شاحنة صغيرة



visit يزور



vase مزهرية (فازة)



village قرية



### Listen and write (True) or (False):

- 1 Little deer runs through the farm. ( )
- 2 Little deer sees a wolf by the lake. ( )
- 3 Little deer isn't afraid from the wolf. ( )

### Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 It's my first time in Aswan.
  - 2 If Little Bird is brave, ...
  - 3 Fatima has a secret.
  - 4 Fatima lifts her head ...

- B**
- a. ( ) She is afraid of heights.
  - b. ( ) stops for a drink of water.
  - c. ( ) I can be brave, too.
  - d. ( ) I'm very excited.
  - e. ( ) to look at the view.

### Read the text and answer the questions:

Amal comes to visit her cousin Fatima in Aswan. She wants to see all the famous places. She wants to visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. There is a great view from there. Fatima has a secret. She is afraid of heights. She can't climb the hill up to dome, but she doesn't want to disappoint her cousin. She decides to face her fears and go with her. They go there and they reach the top. Fatima is scared, but Amal helps her to breathe slowly and takes her hand. She feels calmer and enjoys the incredible view.

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Fatima is afraid of .....  
 a) snakes      b) dogs      c) heights      d) cats
- 2 The underlined word "incredible" means .....  
 a) bad      b) fantastic      c) big      d) calm



### Answer the following questions:

3 Where does Amal want to go?

4 Summarize the passage in two sentences.

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 runs – Little – through – Deer – forest – the.

2 hill – she – How – can – climb – the?

3 feels – Little – and – Deer – proud – happy.

4 face – fear – her – Fatima – decides – to.

### Punctuate the following:

she is very excited

### Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاوب عنه  
آخر الكتاب

“Fatima’s visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa”

- Who goes with Fatima?
- What happens during the visit?



## Writing



Look and read:

انظر واقراً:

## Nashwa's blog

Tuesday June 3<sup>rd</sup>

الثلاثاء ٣ يونيو

All the fun of the **Carnival** ! وسط أجواء المرح في الملهى المتنقلة

Today is my birthday and guess where I am? I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! I want to tell you all about it.

When you arrive at the park, you are suddenly in a **world of fantasy** , and **fairy tales** – it's really exciting. There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing **rides** to try like the rollercoaster (if you're **brave** !), and **theaters** where you can watch **snows** . There are **places** to eat and **stores** , too.

The **children's section** has nine rides, including the **Orient Train** . We have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. My brother Hasim loves water rides, so he wants to go on some of those later this morning. At eleven thirty, we have tickets for the **Waterfalls** rides. It has some high sections so it's a bit scary, and you get very wet!

In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the **simulation** theater. You sit in your seat with big screens all around you, and there are sound and light effects. It feels like you're in different places around the world – snowy mountains, even under the ocean. It's very **realistic** – I can't wait! What a great birthday present – thanks, Mom and Dad!

- (1) الملهى المتنقلة
- (2) عالم خيالي
- (3) قصص خيالية
- (4) ألعاب
- (5) شجاع
- (6) مسارح
- (7) عروض
- (8) أماكن
- (9) محلات
- (10) قسم الأطفال
- (11) قطار الشرق
- (12) شلالات
- (13) المحاكاة
- (14) واقعي

اليوم عيد ميلادي. نحن أنا، أنا مع عائلتي من أجل مفاجأة خاصة بعد ميلادي في الملهى المتنقلة. أريد أن أجركم جميعاً عن هذا اليوم. بمجرد وصولك للمكان سيجد نفسك داخل عالم حالي من القصص الحالية. إنه مكان مثير للاهتمام. يوجد العديد من الأشياء لرؤيتها وفتحها. هناك العديد من الحولات الرائعة لتجربتها مثل قطار الملهى (إذا كنت تحب التسلية) والمسارح حيث يمكنك مشاهدة العروض. توجد أماكن أيضاً لتناول الطعام ويوجد محلات أيضاً.

يشتمل قسم الأطفال على ٩ حولات تصمم قطار الشرق (لدينا تذاكر لبحرته في تمام العاشرة). يحب أخي (حارم) الحولات المائية. لذلك يود أن يذهب إلى تلك الحولات لاحقاً هذا الصباح. لدينا تذاكر للشلالات في تمام الحادية عشرة والصف. يوجد بها بعض الانفعالات التي تجعل البحرية محبة قليلاً وتجعلك تبتل بالماء.

يريد أنا و أسي الذهاب إلى مسرح المحاكاة حيث نجلس على مقعد محيط بشاشات كبيرة من حولك ويوجد مؤثرات صوتية وضوئية. نشعر أنك في أماكن مختلفة حول العالم: جبال يعطها الجليد وحتى في قاع المحيط. نشعر كأنها حقيقة بالفعل. لا أستطيع الانتظار! بالها من هدية رائعة بعد الميلاد. شكراً أمي وأبي.



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

## How to write a blog post



Make a mind map or take notes.

قم بعمل مسودة (خريطة ذهنية) أو اكتب ملاحظات.

Where is the place?

Who is with you?

Place to visit

What can you do there?

Why do you like it?

Description



B

A blog post should have a title and date.

يجب أن تحتوي المدونة على عنوان وتاريخ.

C

Use informal language and first-person pronouns (I, my, me). It has to include a personal story, and it usually gives the writer's opinions and feelings about his experiences.

استخدم لغة غير الرسمية (العامية) وصيغ المصكّم (لغتك) عند الكتابة. يجب أن تتضمن قصة شخصية. وعليك أن تذكر فيها انكبت رائد ومشاعره الصبية على تحاربه.

D

You can add photos to make the blog more attractive.

يمكنك إضافة صور لجعل المدونة تبدو أكثر جاذبية.

e.g. Write a blog post of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

### "My visit to the Pyramids"

Where is it? – Why do you like it?

.....

.....

.....

.....

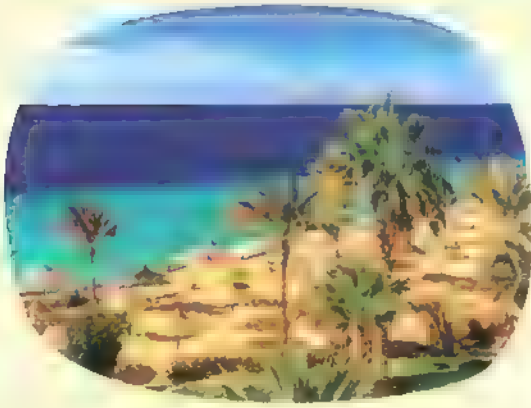


## Project

## A brochure about a vacation destination

Sharm El-Sheikh – an amazing holiday destination<sup>(1)</sup>!

شرم الشيخ - وجهة رائعة في الإجازة.



For only LE 1000 per night, per person  
in a double room.

فقط سعر 1000 جنيه في الليلة للشخص في لغرة شائبة

Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting<sup>(2)</sup> and  
busy<sup>(3)</sup> town in Egypt by the Red Sea.  
There are lots of things to see and do.

شرم الشيخ هي مدينة مثيرة للاهتمام ومزدحمة في مصر مطلة على  
البحر الأحمر. يوجد العديد من الأشياء لرؤيتها وفعلها.

- swim in the sea أن تغط في البحر
- relax<sup>(4)</sup> at the beach أن تسترخي على الشاطئ

- eat good food

أن تناول طعامًا لذيذًا



visit the St Catherine's monastery

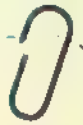
أن تزور دير سانت كاترين

Take Let's Ride! bus from Giza Square<sup>(6)</sup>  
every afternoon at 3pm for LE 500 only!

خذ حافله Let's Ride! من ميدان الجيزة كل ظهيرة، فقط في مقابل 500 جنيه مصري



- go quad biking in the desert أن تتركب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء



(1)	وجهة الإجازة
(2)	مثيرة للاهتمام
(3)	مزدحمة
(4)	يسترخي
(5)	دير
(6)	ميدان





### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Nashwa is at the ..... with her family.
- 2 She wants to try a ..... ride.
- 3 The children's section has nine rides including the Orient .....

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

**A**

- 1 I want to visit ...
- 2 Today is ...
- 3 You can relax ...
- 4 There are places to eat ...

**B**

- a. ( ) at the beach in Sharm El-Sheikh.
- b. ( ) lots of things to see and do.
- c. ( ) and stores in the carnival.
- d. ( ) St Catherine's monastery.
- e. ( ) my birthday.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Ola. Today is my birthday. I'm with my family for my special birthday surprise at the Carnival! There is a lot to see and do here. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster, and theaters where you can watch shows. In the afternoon, Dad and I want to go to the simulation theater where we can sit in our seats with big screens all around us and there are sound and light effects, and we feel like we're in different places around the world – snowy mountains, even under the ocean. It's very realistic.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about .....
  - a) Ola's birthday surprise at the Carnival
  - b) The amazing rides
  - c) Ola's family
  - d) The simulation theater
- 2 Dad and Ola want to go to the simulation theater in .....
  - a) the morning
  - b) the evening
  - c) the afternoon
  - d) night

**Answer the following questions:**

3 What can we do at the Carnival?

.....

4 Why is the simulation theater very realistic?

.....

**Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

1 relax – You – at the – can – beach.

.....

2 biking – the – Go – desert – in – quad.

.....

3 wants – theater – go to – Dad – simulation – to – the.

.....

4 holiday – destination – Sharm E -She kh – an amazing – is.

.....

**Punctuate the following:**

Today is nashwa's birthday

.....

**Write a blog post of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

محتاجه  
آخر كتاب

**"A day at the Carnival"**

When do you go? – What can you do?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



## Vocabulary



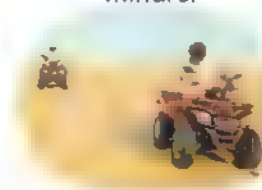
explore the souks



climb the Bab Zuweila minaret



take photos for the school project



go quad biking in the desert



ride on a rollercoaster



visit the Manial Palace Museum

## Language Focus

### If/When

We use **if/when** to talk about facts or things that are usually true.

### Form: التكوين

**If/When** + subject + present simple, subject + present simple...  
subject + can + (inf)...

e.g.



If we go by bus, it is quicker.

### Prepositions of time

with times:

at midnight  
at four o'clock  
at lunchtime

on

with days and dates:

on Monday  
on my wedding  
on April 13<sup>th</sup>

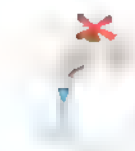
in

with months, seasons and years.

in May  
in winter  
in 2004

## Pronunciation

/w/



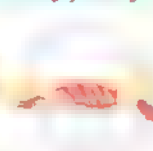
water



wolf



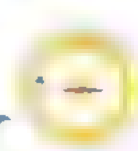
window



wet



whale



west



walk

/v/



web



worm



white



vent



year



watch



volcano



violin



vegetables



vet



veil



vest



van



visit



vase



village

# Unit 3

## CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



### Lesson 1

.....	أماكن	.....	يستكشف الأسواق
.....	يزور متحف قصر المنيل	.....	عطلة
.....	يصعد إلى مئذنة باب زويلة	.....	يركب دراجات رياضية في الصحراء
.....	مدينة الملاهي	.....	يلتقط صورًا لأجل مشروع مدرسي

### Lesson 2

.....	خصم	.....	شركة
.....	مغامرات	.....	تفاصيل بنكية
.....	يحجز	.....	بطاقة ائتمان

### Lesson 3

.....	غروب	.....	خوف
.....	منظر	.....	ارتفاعات
.....	غابة	.....	غزال
.....	مجرى مائي	.....	ثعلب
.....	ذئب	.....	بحيرة
.....	بركان	.....	شباك
.....	خضراوات	.....	كمان
.....	مزهريّة (فازة)	.....	دودة





## How to write a paragraph about your vacation:

- I want to visit + (المكان).
- I want to try some new places.
- I can + (فعل) on + (يوم).
- If I + (فعل مضارع) + I can + (فعل) on + (يوم) .

I want to visit **Cairo** next week. I want to try some new places. I can **explore** the souks on **Saturday**. I can **climb** the Bab Zuweila minaret on **Sunday**.

→ I can **go** quad biking in the desert on **Monday**. I can **ride** on a rollercoaster on **Tuesday**. If I visit the Manial Palace Museum on Wednesday, I can take photos for my school project.

## How to write a blog post about a place you like to visit:

- I want to visit + (المكان).
- I go with + (شخص).
- I like it because + (سبب) ...
- I can + (فعل) ...

### Monday Blog

Tuesday June 3<sup>rd</sup>

→ I want to visit **Alexandria** next Monday. I go with my **friends**. I like Alexandria because it is **quiet and has cool weather**. I can **swim** in the sea. I can **relax** on the beach. I can **eat** fish at restaurants. I can **visit** Qaitbay Fort and the Alexandria Library.

## How to write about a place you want to visit:

- **اسم مدينة** + is an interesting town in Egypt.
- There are lots of things to + فعل ...

**Luxor** is an interesting town in Egypt. There are lots of things to **see** and **do**.

- 
- **explore the town**
  - **visit tombs**
  - **explore the souks**
  - **get in an air balloon**

### 1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets:

- 1 If you ..... (heat) sugar, it ..... (melt).
- 2 If you ..... (feel) tired, you ..... (go) to bed early.
- 3 When the clouds ..... (be) red, it ..... (mean) there's dust in the sky.
- 4 My English always ..... (get better) when I ..... (study) the lessons again at home.
- 5 You can ..... (tell) me if you ..... (need) anything.

### 2 Put the words in order:

- 1 buy / two T-shirts, / you / free / get / one / When / you.  
.....
- 2 don't water / Plants / if / die / you / them.  
.....
- 3 go / want / by bus / Cairo, / to go to / If / you / you can.  
.....
- 4 eat / too much cake, / stomach ache / I / if / I get.  
.....
- 5 I / it / my umbrella / If / can / rains, / use.  
.....
- 6 sees / a bee, / my cat / tries / to catch / it / When / she.  
.....

### 3 Complete the sentences with at, in, or on:

- 1 We celebrate Sham El-Nessim ..... spring.
- 2 Let's meet outside the school ..... 10:30 am.
- 3 We had a science class ..... Monday.
- 4 They went on a trip to the Red Sea ..... July.
- 5 Great news! I'm having a party ..... my birthday!
- 6 What did you do ..... the weekend?



### 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

when – February – on – at

My name is Amira. I play tennis. I practice ..... Fridays and Sundays.  
I always play well ..... I keep practicing every week. The match is on  
..... 3<sup>rd</sup>. I'm very excited. My friends and my family are coming to watch  
the match.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 ..... you study hard, you pass the exams.  
a) Where                      b) When                      c) Who                      d) How
- 2 I visit my grandparents ..... Saturdays.  
a) at                              b) by                              c) on                              d) in
- 3 I go to sleep ..... nine o'clock.  
a) in                              b) on                              c) for                              d) at
- 4 ..... you eat too much sweets, you get a stomach ache.  
a) If                              b) In                              c) Is                              d) By

### 3 Correct the underlined words:

- 1 When you turned off the fan, the room gets really hot. (.....)
- 2 Could we go faster if we travel by bus? (.....)
- 3 My friends give me presents in my birthday. (.....)
- 4 I watch TV on lunchtime. (.....)



### Listening

#### 1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

- 1 Amal wants to go quad biking in the desert. ( )
- 2 Fatima is afraid of heights. ( )
- 3 Fatima decides to face her fears. ( )

#### 2 Listen and complete:

- 1 Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting town in Egypt by the .....
- 2 You can swim in the sea or ..... at the beach.
- 3 You can also visit St Catherine's .....



### Reading

#### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Should we ..... the souks on Tuesday?  
a) ride                      b) explore                      c) take                      d) visit
- 2 Let's ..... the Bab Zuweila minaret first.  
a) take                      b) climb                      c) go                      d) come
- 3 If you ..... water, it boils.  
a) heats                      b) heat                      c) heated                      d) heating
- 4 I go to London ..... winter.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) of                      d) at

#### 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 Study for 30 minutes ...
  - 2 Why don't we visit ...
  - 3 We visit our cousins ...
  - 4 If you don't know a word, ...

- B**
- a. ( ) the Manial Palace Museum?
  - b. ( ) to the simulation theater.
  - c. ( ) you can look it up in the dictionary.
  - d. ( ) but no longer.
  - e. ( ) in Aswan in July.

#### 5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sara and Laila plan to go to Cairo next week. They want to try some new places. Sara wants to visit the Manial Palace Museum on Saturday so that she can take photos for her school project. They want to go quad biking in the desert on Tuesday. They want to climb the Bab Zuweila minaret on Wednesday. It's difficult, but the view from the top is beautiful. They plan to explore the souks on Thursday. Sara suggests riding on a rollercoaster in Giza, too. There is a bus that goes to Giza on Thursday.



**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 Sara and Laila want to try some new .....  
a) places      b) clothes      c) foods      d) games
- 2 There is a bus that goes to ..... City on Thursday.  
a) Giza      b) Port Said      c) Alexandria      d) Cairo

**Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What does Laila want to do on Saturday?

.....

- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

.....



### Writing

**6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

- 1 afraid – Fatima – is – of – heights.  
.....
- 2 the carnival – How – can – go – to – we?  
.....
- 3 good – eat – You – can – food – Sharm El-Sheikh – in.  
.....
- 4 things – are – lots of – Cairo – There – do – to – in.  
.....

**7 Punctuate the following:**

Let s go squad biking on monday.

**8 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**



**“A place you would like to visit”**

- Who would like to go with you?
- Why do you like it?

.....  
.....  
.....



# Theme 2

Myself and others

نفسی و دیگران



# Unit

4

## Celebrate good times!

احتفل بالأوقات السعيدة!



### Unit Overview

Student's Book  
Exercises



Practice  
More



Answers  
100%



• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بهانه هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

• listen, read, and write about celebrations.

• يستمع، يقرأ، ويكتب عن الاحتفالات.

• talk about things that are happening at or around the moment of speaking using the present continuous.

• يتحدث عن الأشياء التي تحدث في أو حول لحظة التحدث باستخدام المضارع المستمر.

• understand the meaning of words and phrases in a text.

• يفهم معنى الكلمات والعبارات في نص.

• learn to estimate volumes.

• يتعلم تقدير الحجم.

• understand the difference between the sounds /ei/ and /e/.

• يفهم الاختلاف بين أصوات ei و e.

• write a formal invitation.

• يكتب دعوة رسمية.

• research and make a poster about a celebration.

• يبحث ويصمم ملصقًا عن احتفال.

### Did-you-know?

• In China, people eat \*noodles on their birthday. The noodles are very long to \*represent a long life for the person.

### I-can-find-it-out!

• The Ancient Egyptians didn't celebrate everyone's birthday. They celebrated the birthdays of the pharaohs. They also celebrated the pharaoh's \*coronation day.

\*noodles

\*represent

\*coronation

تويج



**Can you blow up some balloons?**

هل يمكنك نفخ بعض البالونات؟



Listen, point, and say:

اسمع، أشر وقل.

### Main vocabulary



decorate the birthday cake

يزين كعكة عيد الميلاد



blow up the balloons

ينفخ البالونات



let off the fireworks

يطلق الألعاب النارية



hang up the streamers

يعلق الشرائط



make a playlist

يعد قائمة تشغيل الأغاني



send the invitations

يرسل الدعوات

### Extra vocabulary

cousin

ابن العم أو الخال

scissors

مقص

string

خيوط

candles

شموع

adult

شخص بالغ

yard

حديقة منزل (فناء)

event

حدث



## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

Present		Past
pass	يمرر	passed
decorate	يزين	decorated

## أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past
tie	يربط	tied
finish	ينهى	finished

## Irregular verbs

Present		Past
hang up	يعلق	hung up
send	يرسل	sent
mean	يقصد	meant
choose	يختار	chose

## أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past
blow up	ينفخ	blew up
write	يكتب	wrote
have/has to	يجب أن	had to
let off	يطلق	let off

## Expressions and Phrases

Good idea.	فكرة رائعة.	I'm not sure yet.	لست متأكدًا بعد.
RSVP	من فضلك، أرسل ردًا.	let me know	أخبروني
really great	رائع حقًا	get dark	يظلم

## Vocabulary Check

- يتغير معنى بعض الأفعال عند إضافة حرف جر ويصبح اسمها (phrasal verb).

e.g. blow up - ينفخ - hang up - يعلق - let off - يطلق

- يتغير الفعل (tie) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

tie + ing = tying

- (RSVP) هي اختصار للمصطلح الفرنسي (Repondez s'il vous plait) ويعنى (من فضلك، أرسل ردًا).

## Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 For the party, I made a/an (cake - playlist - firework - invitation) of the best 20 songs nowadays.
- 2 Mom likes to (let off - blow up - decorate - hang up) my birthday cake every year.
- 3 I helped my brother blow up the (streamers - balloons - fireworks - invitations) for the party.
- 4 They let off the (invitations - cake - playlist - fireworks) into the sky for celebration.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وبادل الأدوار:



Hani

Hi Youssef, what are you doing?

مرحبًا يوسف، ماذا تفعل؟

Hi, Hani. I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister Nesma's party. Can you help me?

مرحبًا هاني، أنا أعلق الشرائط من أجل حفل أختي نسمة. هل بإمكانك مساعدتي؟

Youssef



Hani

Sure. What can I do, cousin?

بالطبع. ماذا أفعل يا ابن العم؟

Youssef



Will you pass me the scissors, please?  
I'm tying the streamers together and I  
need to cut the string. Can you also  
blow up some balloons? We need to  
hang those up, too.

هل تمرر لي المقص من فضلك؟ أنا أربط الشرائط  
معًا وأحتاج إلى أن أقطع الحيط. هل يمكنك نفخ بعض  
البالونات؟ نحتاج إلى أن نعلقها أيضًا.



Hani

Of course! What are your other sisters doing? Are they helping?

بالطبع! ماذا تفعل أخواتك الأخريات؟ هل يساعدن؟

Youssef



Dalida and Noha? Yes, they are.  
They're decorating the birthday  
cake. They have candles for it, too.  
Oh, there's Amina. Amina! Are you  
sending the invitations?

داليدا ونهى؟ نعم. إنهما تزيان كعكه (بورية) عيد الميلاد.  
لديهما شموع من أجل الكعك أيضًا. أوه، ها هي أمينة.  
أمينة! هل تقومين بإرسال الدعوات؟



Amina

Hi Youssef. Yes, I am. But I'm sending everyone email invitations.

مرحبًا يوسف. نعم. لكني أرسل دعوات بالبريد الإلكتروني للجميع.

Good idea. How many people are coming?

فكرة رائعة. كم عدد الناس القادمين؟

Youssef



Amina

I'm not sure yet, but I wrote "RSVP" on the invitations. That means everyone has to let me know if they're coming.

لست متأكدة بعد، لكنني كتبت «من فضلك، أرسل ردًا» على الدعوات. هذا يعني أنه يجب على الجميع إخباري إذا كانوا قادمين.



Who's choosing the music?

من يقوم باختيار الموسيقى؟

Hani



Amina

Dalida is going to make a playlist on her phone. She made one for my party and it was really great.

ستقوم داليدا بإعداد قائمة تشغيل أغاني على هاتفها. لقد أعدت واحدة لحفلي وكانت رائعة حقًا.

That's right. It was really good. We can ask her to make it after she finishes the cake.

هذا صحيح. كانت جيدة حقًا. يمكننا أن نطلب منها أن تعدها بعد أن تنتهي من الكعكة (التورتة).

Hani



Amina

And we need to find an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark.

ونحتاج إلى إيجاد شخص بالغ ليطلق الألعاب النارية في حديقة المنزل عندما يحل الظلام.

Yes, Nesma loves them. I know, I'll ask my dad to do it.

نعم، نسمة تحبهم. أعرف، سأطلب من والدي أن يفعل ذلك.

Youssef





### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Mazen is ..... up the balloons.
- 2 Eman is sending email ..... to our friends.
- 3 Mai is making the ..... on her phone.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 Noha is decorating the birthday cake.
  - 2 A Who's choosing the music?
  - 3 "RSVP" means that everyone has to ...
  - 4 We can let off the fireworks ...

- B**
- a. ( ) B Dalida is going to make the playlist.
  - b. ( ) let me know if they're coming.
  - c. ( ) when it gets dark.
  - d. ( ) She has candles for it too.
  - e. ( ) the balloons.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Ali. Today is my sister Salma's birthday. We are very happy and excited. We have a lot of things to do. My brother Ramy is hanging up the streamers. He needs the scissors to cut the string. My cousin Ahmed is blowing up some balloons. My mother is decorating the birthday cake. She has candles for it, too. My sister, Noha is sending everyone email invitations. Uncle Mohamed is making a playlist. We need an adult to let off the fireworks in the yard when it gets dark. My dad can do it.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Noha is ..... everyone email invitations.  
 a) decorating      b) sending      c) blowing      d) hanging
- 2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....  
 a) decorating the birthday cake      b) hanging up the streamers  
 c) blowing up some balloons      d) letting off the fireworks



**Answer the following questions:**

3 Who is decorating the birthday cake?

.....

4 What is Uncle Mohamed doing?

.....

**4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

1 for – party – my – a playlist – Dalida – made.

.....

2 balloons – some – Can – blow – you – up?

.....

3 you – me – the scissors, – Will – pass – please?

.....

4 hanging – my – I'm – up – for – the streamers – sister.

.....

**5 Punctuate the following:**

how many people are coming

.....

**6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

محتاج  
آخر الكتاب

**“My sister’s birthday”**

· decorate the cake – send the invitations ·

.....

.....

.....

.....



**I'm studying hard for my exams**

أنا أدرس بجد من أجل امتحاناتي



**Listen and say:**

**استمع وقل:**

### Main vocabulary

hard	بجد	exams	امتحانات	indoor	بالمزمل
------	-----	-------	----------	--------	---------

### Extra vocabulary

important (adj.)	هام	revision	مراجعة	already	بالمعل
slow (adj.)	بطء	reader	قارئ	history	تاريخ
documentary	فيلم وثائقي	free time	وقت فراغ	music concert	حفلة موسيقية

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

**Present**

**Past**

**Present**

**Past**

study

يدرس

studied

cycle

يقود دراجة

cycled

relax

يسترخي

relaxed

organize

ينظم

organized

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

**Present**

**Past**

**Present**

**Past**

spend

يقضي

spent

tell

يخبر

told

### Expressions and Phrases

What's your news?	ما أخبارك؟	How are things?	كيف هي الأمور؟
at the moment	في هذه اللحظة	don't worry	لا تقلق
get outside	يذهب إلى الخارج	do exercise	يؤدي تمارين
on the weekends	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	a few times a week	بضع مرات في الأسبوع
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	What's the weather like?	ما حال الطقس؟
take ages	يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا	get me ...	يحضر لي ...

### Vocabulary Check

كلمة (DVD) هي اختصار لـ (Digital Video Disc) وتعني قرصًا متعدد الاستخدامات.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

From:	ali@qwikmail.com
To:	eyad@egyptmail.com
Subject:	What's your news?

Hi Eyad,

How are things?

I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. But don't worry, I'm not spending all my time indoors! I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise, so I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too – it's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to **talk about**<sup>1</sup> how our revision is going! My friend Aser is organizing a **party**<sup>2</sup> at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that.

What's the weather like in Alexandria? It's really hot here already! ☀️

In your last **email**<sup>3</sup>, you asked me what I'm reading at the moment. I'm finishing *Everything Ancient Egypt* but it's taking ages because I'm a slow reader! I am enjoying it – I love history books – and the documentary is good, too (my mom said she will get me the DVD). What about you? What are you reading?

Write soon and tell me your news,

Ali



- (1) يتحدث عن  
 (2) حفلة  
 (3) بريد إلكتروني

مرحبًا إياد

كيف هي الأمور؟

أنا أدرس بجد دمعدي في هذه الحارة حالي بكرة لاسموي، أنا أقصص كل وقتي في اسريري علم له من فهمي بديت في الخارج ومفاتيح بعض بديت، لذلك كتر أنا صبح في الحصة، أنا بكرة قوم بركوب الدراجات في عطلة بيده لاسموي مع والدي ابول روبه اصدوقي بكرة في لاسموي بديت، من الحصة بديت، ولاستطيع اديت، بديت من كدي بديت المراجعة! بديت صديقي أسر حفلة في منزله في نهاية الامتحانات، لذلك نتطلع جميعًا إلى ذلك.

كيف هو الطقس في الإسكندرية؟ الجو حار حقًا هنا بالفعل!

في رسالتك الإلكترونية الأخيرة، سألتك أنت كيف أنا، انتهى لأن مر كتاب كل شيء في مصر القديمة ولكن الأمر يستغرق وقتًا طويلاً لأنني قارئ بطيء، أنا أحب كتاب التاريخ وأفلام الوثائقية جيدة جداً أنت من هنا سيخبرني (DVD)، ماذا عنك؟ ماذا تقرأ؟

اكتب قريبًا وأخبرني عن أحوالك،

على



## Language Focus

### The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

#### Usage: الاستخدام

- \* We use the present continuous to talk about actions in progress around or near the moment of speaking, like: "this week/at the moment/today".

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن الأفعال الجارية حول أو بالقرب من لحظة التحدث، مثل هذا الأسبوع، في هذه اللحظة.

eg



They **are organizing** a party **this week**.

هم ينظمون حفله هذا الأسبوع.

- \* We use the present continuous to talk about actions that are happening at the moment of speaking.

نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتحدث عن أفعال تحدث أثناء تحدثنا في الوقت الحالي.

eg



We **are helping** to make the birthday cake.

نحن نساعد في صنع كعكة عيد الميلاد.

- \* We use the present continuous to describe things that are happening in a picture.

نستخدم المضارع المستمر لوصف أشياء تحدث في صورة.

eg



They **are playing** with the balloons.

إنهم يلعبون بالبالونات.



## Form: التكوين

## Affirmative sentence

I  
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد  
We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع

am ('m)  
is ('s)  
are ('re)

+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ...



1 She's studying for her exams now.

إنها تدرس لامتحانها الآن.



2 They're playing football with the balloons.

إنهم يلعبون كرة القدم بالبالونات.

## Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية:

I  
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد  
We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع

am not  
is not (isn't)  
are not (aren't)

+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ...



They aren't enjoying their vacation.

هم لا يستمتعون بإجازاتهم.



I am not playing in the basketball match today.

أنا لا أَلعب في مباراة كرة السلة اليوم.

## Yes/No question

Question السؤال

Is

اسم مفرد he/ she/ it/

Are

اسم جمع you/ we/ they/

+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ... ?

Answer الإجابة

Yes,

subject (الفاعل)

is / are.

No,

isn't / aren't.



A: Is he working in France?

هل يعمل هو في فرنسا؟

B: Yes, he is.

نعم، يعمل في فرنسا.

## Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام

Question word  
كلمة الاستفهام

am/ is/ are

subject (الفاعل)

+ (inf.) مصدر الفعل + ing ... ? }



A: What are you doing?

ماذا تفعل؟

B: I'm reading a book.

أنا أقرأ كتاباً.

## Key words

this + (time)

هذا + (وقت)

at the moment

في هذه اللحظة

today

اليوم

now

الآن

## Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Nora (is traveling – traveling – trave – are traveling) to Alexandria this week.
- 2 (Is – Are – Am – Do) Kareem listening to music at the moment?
- 3 The boys are (played – play – playing – plays) with the balloons in the park.



### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Ali is ..... hard for his exams.
- 2 He is going ..... every morning in the park.
- 3 He is cycling on the weekends with his .....

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 What are Noha and Dalida ..... now?  
a) does                      b) do                      c) doing                      d) did
- 2 The girls ..... in the park at the moment.  
a) are cycling              b) is cycling              c) cycling                      d) cycle
- 3 ..... you studying English at the moment?  
a) Am                      b) Is                      c) Do                      d) Are
- 4 I ..... the book now.  
a) am finishing              b) finish                      c) finished                      d) finishes

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 Rana is wearing ...
  - 2 I'm studying hard for ...
  - 3 Malak is reading a book ...
  - 4 Salma and Maha are trying ...

- B**
- a. ( ) to make a cake.
  - b. ( ) called *Everything in Ancient Egypt*.
  - c. ( ) baking a cake.
  - d. ( ) a red T-shirt.
  - e. ( ) my exams at the moment.

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 is – to – anyone – not – Amina – talking.

2 not – I'm – indoors – spending – my time – all.

3 this – What – Malak – doing – are – week, – you?

4 my dad – cycling – weekend – I'm – this – with.

### Punctuate the following:

I m reading at the moment

### Write an email of about 50–60 words to your friend to tell him about your exams:

مخاطب  
أخو الكتاب

From	:	
To	:	
Subject	:	





### Birthdays around the world

أعياد الميلاد حول العالم



Listen and say:

اسمع وقل:

#### Main vocabulary

candles	شموع	adults	بالعون	birthday cards	بطاقات عيد الميلاد
breath	نفس	guests	ضيوف	noodles	شعرية

#### Extra vocabulary

countries	دول	USA	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	Britain	بريطانيا
South Africa	جنوب إفريقيا	Holland	هولندا	Nigeria	نيجيريا
snacks	وجبات خفيفة	India	الهند	Brazil	البرازيل
Chinese (adj.)	صيني	fire	حريق	flame	لهب

#### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

##### Regular verbs

##### أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	يشتمل على
		include	included

##### Irregular verbs

##### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
blow out	ينفخ (يطفن الشمع)	blew out	يحرق
		burn	burnt

#### Expressions and Phrases

all over the world	جميع أنحاء العالم	with one breath	في نفس واحد
left to burn	يتركوا حتى يحترقوا	fully grown	ناضج تمامًا

#### Definitions

adults	الأشخاص البالغون	fully grown people, not children	أشخاص بالغون تمامًا وليسوا أطفالًا
blow out	ينفخ	to send air through your mouth to stop a fire or flame	أن تخرج الهواء عبر فمك لإيقاف حريق أو لهب
breath	نفس	the air that comes out of your mouth	الهواء الذي يخرج من فمك
noodles	شعرية	a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs	قطعة طويلة ورقيقة من الطعام مصنوعة من الدقيق والماء والبيض
guests	ضيوف	people you invite to your home	الأشخاص الذين تدعوهم إلى منزلك

#### Vocabulary Check

لاحظ الفرق بين

- (breath) وهو اسم بمعنى (نفس) وتنطق الـ /θ/.
- (breathe) وهي فعل بمعنى (يتنفس) وتنطق الـ /ð/.



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

### Candles and cakes

Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. What do we do in Egypt? We usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a **present** <sup>(1)</sup>, too.



يتم الاحتفال بأعياد الميلاد في جميع أنحاء العالم. ماذا نفعل في مصر؟ عادة ما نصنع كعكات أعواد الميلاد لأطفالنا ونضع الشموع عليها لإظهار أعمارهم. غالبًا ما تكون لدينا حفلات مع الكثير من أفراد العائلة والأصدقاء. عادة ما يحصل الأطفال على هدية أيضًا.

(1)

هدية

### Birthday are not just for children

What about <sup>(2)</sup> in other countries? In the USA and Britain, it is **usual** <sup>(3)</sup> to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults. People often give other people birthday cards too, **especially** <sup>(4)</sup> on important birthdays. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10 and 15.



ماذا عن البلدان الأخرى؟ من المعتاد في الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية وبريطانيا تقديم هدايا للأصدقاء والعائلة في أعياد ميلادهم حتى لو كانوا بالغين. غالبًا ما يعطى الأشخاص بطاقات أعياد ميلاد لأشخاص آخرين أيضًا، خاصة في أعياد الميلاد المهمة. في جنوب إفريقيا، عيد الميلاد رقم ٢١ هو عيد ميلاد مهم لأنك أصبحت بالغًا في هذا العمر. في هولندا، يحصل الأطفال على هدايا أكبر عندما يبلغون من العمر ٥ أو ١٠ أو ١٥ أو ٢٠ عامًا. في نيجيريا، الأعياد الأكثر أهمية هي عيد الميلاد الأول وعند بلوغ سن ١٠ و ١٥.

(2)

ماذا عن؟

(3)

معتاد

(4)

خصوصًا

## Our birthday celebrations احتفالات أعياد ميلادنا

Children everywhere like **party food**<sup>(5)</sup>. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. Did you know that when it is a child's birthday in Brazil, they give the first **piece of**<sup>(6)</sup> their birthday cake to the most important people in their family? That's their mom and dad! In India too, the birthday child gives cake to all the guests at their party first, before they have some themselves.



(5) طعام الحفلات

(6) قطعة من

يحب الأطفال في كل مكان طعام الحفلات. غالبًا ما يشمل ذلك الكعك الصغير والسندويشات والوجبات الخفيفة. في العديد من البلدان، يحب الأطفال إطفاء الشموع في كعكات عيد ميلادهم. من الجيد أن تفعل هذا بنفس واحد! لكن في الهند، تُترك الشموع لتتحرق. هل تعلم أنه عندما يصادف عيد ميلاد الطفل في البرازيل، فإنهم يقدمون القطعة الأولى من كعك عيد ميلادهم إلى الأشخاص الأكثر أهمية في أسرهم؟ أمهم وأبيهم! في الهند أيضًا، يقدم طفل عيد الميلاد كعكًا لجميع الضيوف في حفلتهم أولاً، قبل أن يحصل على بعض منها.

## A longer life حياة أطول

Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life. And Chinese people are often **older**<sup>(7)</sup>. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!



بعض البلدان لديها طعام عيد ميلاد مختلف. في الصين، يحب الناس

أكل نودلز طويلة و التفاح في عيد ميلادهم. لماذا؟ لأنهم يعتقدون

أنهم يمكن أن يعيشوا حياة أطول. ولأنهم يعتقدون أن هذه الأشياء يمكن أن تمنحهم حياة أطول.

العمر عامًا واحدًا يوم ولادتهم. لذا إذا كنت في العاشرة من عمرك، فإن الطفل الصيني هو في

الحادية عشرة من عمره!

(7)

أكبر سنًا

### Tip!

To match headings to paragraphs in a text, look for key words first. What is the topic of the key words in each paragraph? Then look at the headings. Are there any words that are the same or are about the same topics?

لمطابقة العناوين بالفقرات في النص، ابحث عن الكلمات الرئيسية أولاً. ما هو موضوع الكلمات الرئيسية في كل فقرة؟ ثم انظر إلى العناوين. هل هناك كلمات متطابقة أو تتحدث عن نفس المواضيع؟

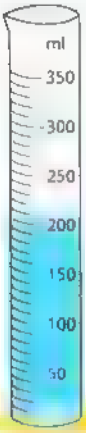


Read and notice.

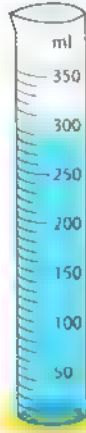
امرأ ولاحظ.

## Estimating volume تقدير الحجم

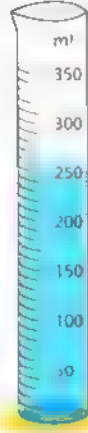
Estimate how much water is in each one. How much water is there in total?



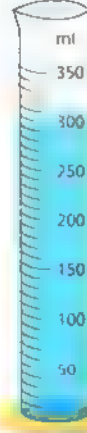
200 ml



290 ml



250 ml



300 ml



160 ml

There's about 1200 ml of water in total.

### Tip!

When we talk about the amount of something, we don't always need to be exact. We can **estimate**, or guess, the amount. For example, if your mom asks you, "How much milk is there in the fridge?" You can say, "There's about half a liter" not, "There's 487 milliliters." We often use the word "**about**" when giving an estimate.

عندما نتحدث عن مقدار شيء ما لا نحتاج دائماً إلى أن نكون دقيقين. يمكنك تقدير الكمية أو تخمينها. على سبيل المثال، إذا سألك والدتك: «ما كمية الحليب الموجودة في الثلاجة؟» يمكنك أن تقول: «هناك حوالي نصف لتر» وليس «هناك ٤٨٧ مليلترًا». غالبًا ما نستخدم كلمة «حوالي» عند إعطاء تقدير.





## Pronunciation

### Short and long vowels أصوات الحروف المتحركة القصيرة والطويلة



Listen and say:

اسمع قل:

/ei/

cake

كعكة (تورتة)

train

قطار

say

يقول

bake

يخبز

pay

يدفع

stay

يبقى

wait

ينتظر

main

رئيسي

shade

ظل

sail

يبحر

pain

ألم

plate

طبق

tasty

لذيذ

/e/

bed

سرير

head

رأس

shed

كوخ

bread

خبز

get

يحصل على

ledge

الحافة

said

قال

men

رجال

sell

يبيع

pen

قلم جاف

let

يدع

desk

مكتب



### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 In China, people like to eat long ..... or peaches on their birthday.
- 2 Chinese people are often .....
- 3 Chinese people become ..... on the day they are born.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

**A** 1 We put candles on birthday

cakes ...

2 "Adults" are ....

3 "Noodles" means ...

4 21 is an important birthday ...

**B** a. ( ) people you invite to your home.

b. ( ) because you become an adult at this age.

c. ( ) to show the children's age.

d. ( ) a long, thin piece of food made from flour, water, and eggs.

e. ( ) fully grown people, not children.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Birthday celebrations are not the same everywhere. In Egypt, we make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. In many countries, children like to blow out the candles on their birthday cakes. It is good to do this with one breath! But in India, the candles are left to burn. Children everywhere like party food. This often includes small cakes, sandwiches, and snacks. In Brazil, they give the first piece of their birthday cake to the most important people in their family: their mom and dad!

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "celebrations" means .....  
 a) games                      b) parties                      c) candles                      d) travels
- 2 In ....., the candles are left to burn.  
 a) Brazil                      b) India                      c) Egypt                      d) USA

**Tip!**

We use formal language when we speak or write to people we don't know very well. We use polite language and correct spelling and grammar in formal writing.

نستخدم لغة رسمية عندما نتحدث أو نكتب إلى أشخاص لا نعرفهم جيدًا. نستخدم لغة مهذبة وقواعد إملاء وقواعد لغوية صحيحة، في الكتابة الرسمية.

**Informal language**

لغة غير رسمية

1 Bye for now,

وداعا الآن،

2 Hi,

أهلاً،

3 party

حفلة

4 come to

يأتى إلى

5 say yes or no

يقول نعم أو لا

**Formal language**

لغة رسمية

1 Sincerely,

تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام،

2 Dear,

السيد العزيز،

3 celebration

احتفال

4 attend

يحضر

5 confirm

يؤكد على

## How to write an invitation in a formal language

### كيف تكتب دعوة بلغة رسمية

From:	عنوان البريد الإلكتروني الخاص بالمرسل
To:	اسم الشخص الذي تدعوه
Subject:	عنوان الدعوة

#### Opening phrase

عبارة افتتاحية

• Dear,

#### Reason for writing:

سبب الكتابة

• I am writing to invite you to...

#### What the celebration is for

• Mother's Day Celebration

#### Where it is

• School Hall

#### When it is (time and date)

• Date: Sunday March 21  
• Time: 4:00 pm – 7:00 pm

#### When the person has to reply

• By February 20

#### A request

طلب

• Please reply

#### Closing phrase

عبارة ختامية

• Yours sincerely,





Look and read:

انظر وامرأ:

**Book Day<sup>(1)</sup> Party!**

Let's celebrate reading!

**Dress up<sup>(2)</sup>** as your favorite **character<sup>(3)</sup>**  
from your favorite book.

**Figure out<sup>(4)</sup>** which character your friends  
are from the clothes they are wearing.

We have an amazing **prize<sup>(5)</sup>** for the  
best **costume<sup>(6)</sup>**.

Come and try our **drinks<sup>(7)</sup>** and delicious  
**snacks<sup>(8)</sup>**!

Thursday, 2 pm, in the school hall

Family **members<sup>(9)</sup>** all **welcome<sup>(10)</sup>**!

- |      |             |
|------|-------------|
| (1)  | يوم الكتاب  |
| (2)  | تكر         |
| (3)  | شخصية       |
| (4)  | اكتشف       |
| (5)  | جائزة       |
| (6)  | زى تنكرى    |
| (7)  | مشروبات     |
| (8)  | وجبات خفيفة |
| (9)  | أعضاء       |
| (10) | مرحب به     |



حفلة يوم الكتاب!

دعونا نحتفل بالقراءة!

نكر فى رى شخصيتك المفضلة من كتابك المفضل.

اكتشف شخصية أصدقائك من الملابس التى يرتدونها.

لدينا جائزة مذهلة لأفضل رى تنكرى.

تعال وحرب مشروباتنا ووجباتنا الخفيفة اللذيذة!

الخميس الساعة ٢ ظهرًا بقاعة المدرسة

مرحب بكل أفراد العائلة!



### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Sara will attend the Book Day .....
- 2 She will go with her .....
- 3 They will dress up as their favorite ..... from their favorite books.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

**A** 1 "Sincerely" means ...

2 Please reply by August 25 to confirm...

3 Dress up as your favorite character...

4 We use formal language when...

**B** a. ( ) we speak or write to people we don't know very well.

b. ( ) from your favorite book.

c. ( ) we speak to close friends.

d. ( ) if you can attend the celebration.

e. ( ) "bye for now".

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Eman. I'm an English teacher. At school, we are inviting some people to attend Mother's Day Celebration this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Sunday March 21. We love our school and our students. As well as students and teachers, we are inviting people from the local community who often help our school. Students will dress up as their favorite characters from their favorite books. We will have an amazing prize for the best costume. Some students will sing some traditional songs.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "attend" means .....  
 a) celebrate      b) read about      c) come to      d) say yes or no
- 2 We are ..... people from the local community.  
 a) teaching      b) speaking      c) drawing      d) inviting

### Answer the following questions:

3 When is the celebration?

4 How will the students dress up?

### Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 attend – can – celebration – the – You.

2 an amazing – for – costume – We – prize – have – the best.

3 try – our – Come – and – snacks – delicious.

4 are – What – you – on Friday – organizing?

### Punctuate the following:

let's celebrate reading

### Write a formal email of about 50–60 words to your friend inviting him to The Book Day Party.

مسابقات  
کتاب

From	:	
To	:	
Subject	:	



## Vocabulary



decorate the birthday  
cake



blow up the balloons



let off the fireworks



hang up  
the streamers



make a playlist



send the invitations

## Language Focus

### The Present Continuous Tense

#### Affirmative sentence:

I	am ('m)	+ inf + ing ...
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	is ('s)	
We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع	are (re)	

e.g. She's **studying** for her exams this week.

#### Negative sentence:

I	am not	+ inf + ing
He/ She/ It/ اسم مفرد	is not (isn't)	
We/ They/ You/ اسم جمع	are not (aren't)	

e.g. They **aren't** enjoying their vacation.

#### Yes/No questions

Question	Is	he/ she/ it/ اسم مفرد	+ inf. + ing?
	Are	we/ they/ you/ اسم جمع	

Answer	Yes,	subject	is/ are.
	No,		isn't/ aren't.

e.g. A: Is he working in France? B: Yes, he is.

#### Wh- question

Question word	am/ is/ are	subject	+ inf + ing?
---------------	-------------	---------	--------------

e.g. A: What **are** you doing? B: I'm reading a book

## Pronunciation

/ei/

cake	wait
train	shade
say	sail
bake	pain
pay	plate
stay	tasty
main	

/e/

bed	sad
head	sell
shed	men
bread	pen
get	let
ledge	desk



# Unit 4

## CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



### Lesson 1

.....	يزين كعكة عيد الميلاد	.....	ابن العمر / الخال
.....	ينفخ البالونات	.....	خيط
.....	يطلق الألعاب النارية	.....	مقص
.....	يعلق الشرائط	.....	شموع
.....	يعد قائمة تشغيل أغاني	.....	شخص ناضج
.....	يرسل الدعوات	.....	حدث

### Lesson 2

.....	امتحانات	.....	بجد
.....	هام	.....	بالمنزلة
.....	بالفعل	.....	مراجعة
.....	فيلم وثائقي	.....	تاريخ
.....	قارئ	.....	وقت فراغ

### Lesson 3

.....	شموع	.....	بطاقات عيد الميلاد
.....	ضيوف	.....	شعرية
.....	العمر (السن)	.....	دول
.....	الولايات المتحدة الأمريكية	.....	بريطانيا
.....	جنوب إفريقيا	.....	هولندا
.....	نيجيريا	.....	وجبات خفيفة
.....	الهند	.....	البرازيل
.....	بالغون	.....	صيني
.....	حريق	.....	لهب
.....	حرارة	.....	تقاليد

## WRITING TIME



### How to write about birthday preparations:

- Today is + اسم شخص + birthday.
- Singular subject + is + نشاط
- Plural subject + are + نشاط
- A lot of people are coming today. It's going to be fun.

Today is my sister Hana's birthday. Mom is decorating the birthday cake. My brother and I are hanging up the streamers. My cousin Adel is blowing up the balloons. Dad is sending the invitations. He is making a playlist for the party, too. A lot of people are coming today. It's going to be fun.

### How to write about a birthday celebration in a country:

- In (اسم البلد), it is (عادات البلد) .....
- In (اسم بلد أخرى), it is (عادات البلد) ....
- In (اسم البلد), it is (عادات البلد) .....

In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Holland, children get bigger presents when they are 5, 10, 15 or 20. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, and 15.

### How to write a formal invitation email:

- Dear+ اسم الشخص المدعو
- I am writing to invite you to + سبب الدعوة
- Date + كتابة تاريخ المناسبة
- Time + كتابة وقت المناسبة
- Location + مكان المناسبة
- Please reply by + وقت to confirm if you can attend the + مناسبة

From	: nadia@gmail.com
To	: nahla@gmail.com
Subject	: Wedding Party

Dear Mrs. Nahla,

I am writing to invite you to my sister's wedding party. We are organizing a special day for this event on Monday, October 17<sup>th</sup>. Family members and friends will be there.

Date : Monday, October 17<sup>th</sup>  
 Time : 6 00 to 9 00 pm  
 Location: Jewel garden, city center.

Please reply by September 5 to confirm if you can attend the wedding party.



## Listening

### 1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

- 1 In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give adults presents. ( )
- 2 In South Africa, 15 is an important birthday. ( )
- 3 In China, the most important birthdays are one, 10 and 15. ( )

### 2 Listen and complete:

- 1 Today is Noha's ....
- 2 Dalia is hanging up the .....
- 3 Mom is ..... the birthday cake.



## Reading

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 What are you ..... at the moment, Ola?  
a) do                      b) does                      c) doing                      d) did
- 2 Mona ..... time walking in the park today.  
a) spend                      b) spends                      c) is spending                      d) spending
- 3 "....." are people you invite to your home.  
a) Adults                      b) Chinese                      c) Guests                      d) Children
- 4 We need an adult to let off the .....  
a) balloons                      b) cakes                      c) fireworks                      d) streamers

### 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

- 1 Dalia is making a playlist ...
- 2 "Blow out" means ...
- 3 "Celebration" gives the same meaning ....
- 4 It's important to get outside ...

B

- a. ( ) as "party".
- b. ( ) history books.
- c. ( ) for the party on her phone.
- d. ( ) and do some exercise, too.
- e. ( ) to send air through your mouth.

### 5 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Eyad. I'm in grade six. I'm studying hard for my exams, but I'm not spending all my time indoors. I know it's important to get outside and do some exercise. I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm also cycling on the weekends with my dad. I'm trying to see my friends a few times a week, too.

It's good to relax and have fun sometimes, and we try not to talk about how our revision is going! My friend Adam is organizing a party at his house for the end of the exams, so we are all looking forward to that.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The underlined word "cycling" means .....  
 a) ride a bike    b) go by car    c) go by train    d) go running
- 2 Eyad is trying to see his friends .....  
 a) once a day    b) twice a year  
 c) once a month    d) a few times a week

**Answer the following questions:**

- 3 How does Eyad spend his time outside? .....
- 4 What is Adam doing? .....



**Writing**

**6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

- 1 in the – He's – at the – running – park – moment.  
 .....
- 2 birthday – Are – the – you – decorating – cake?  
 .....
- 3 for – B rthdays – children – not – just – are.  
 .....
- 4 off – Dad – letting – fireworks – is – the.  
 .....

**7 Punctuate the following:**

youssef's dad is sending the invitations

**8 Write a formal email of about 50–60 words to your friend inviting him to your birthday party.**

مجاب عنه  
آخر الكتاب

From	:	.....
To	:	.....
Subject	:	.....
.....		
.....		
.....		



Assess your progress  
★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

50–64%

Practice more

65–84%

85–100%

Well done!





## Listening

### 1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

- 1 They're traveling to Alexandria next week. ( )
- 2 On Sunday, they can visit the Manial Palace Museum. ( )
- 3 On Wednesday, they can go quad biking in the desert in Al-Fayoum. ( )

### 2 Listen and complete:

- 1 Birthdays are ..... all over the world.
- 2 In Egypt, we usually put ..... on the cakes to show ages.
- 3 The children usually get .....



## Reading

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A: Are you ..... English this week? B: Yes, I am.  
a) study      b) studying      c) studies      d) studied
- 2 My sister is blowing up the .....  
a) balloons      b) cakes      c) streamers      d) invitations
- 3 We watch TV ..... seven o'clock.  
a) at      b) in      c) on      d) by
- 4 We can visit the museum first, then ..... the souks.  
a) climb      b) go      c) explore      d) take

### 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 They aren't baking a ...
  - 2 I'm on a vacation with my family ...
  - 3 We can take photos ...
  - 4 If we take the bus, ...

- B**
- a. ( ) we will arrive in about 30 minutes.
  - b. ( ) for the school project.
  - c. ( ) chocolate cake.
  - d. ( ) blue and yellow seats.
  - e. ( ) in Alexandria this week.

### 5 Read the text and answer the questions:

I'm Ahmed. Today is my brother Youssef's birthday party. I'm hanging up the streamers for the party. My friend Adam is blowing up some colorful balloons. My mother and my friend Amira are decorating the cake that my mom made for the birthday party. I'm also making a playlist of all my brother's favorite songs.

My father has some fireworks. He's going to let them off in the yard when it gets dark. We're all very excited for the party.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1** The main idea of the text is about a .....  
 a) trip to Cairo                      b) day at the zoo  
 c) birthday party                    d) playing sports
- 2** Adam is blowing up some colorful .....  
 a) cakes                  b) balloons                  c) presents                  d) fireworks

**Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What are mom and Amira doing? .....
- 4 Where are they going to let off the fireworks? .....



## Writing

**6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

- 1 very – I'm – about – excited – vacation – our.
- 2 sisters – My – cooking – food – some – are.
- 3 next – biking – we – Should – go – Friday – quad?
- 4 don't – water – Plants – if – die – you – them.

**7 Punctuate the following:**

if you walk to school it is faster.

 **Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

عجائب من  
آخر الكتاب

### "A vacation in Cairo"

### Manial Palace Museum – visit

## Amazing journeys

رحلات رائعة



Unit Overview

Student's Book  
ExercisesPractice  
MoreAnswers  
100%

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about famous travelers in the past.

• يسمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن سياح مشهورين في الماضي

- talk about things that happened in the past using common irregular verbs.

• يتحدث عن أشياء حدثت في الماضي مستخدمًا الأفعال غير المنتظمة، مثل:

- understand the difference between the sounds /dʒ/ and /ʒ/.

فهم الفرق بين صوتين: /dʒ/ و /ʒ/

- understand specific details in a text.

فهم تفاصيل محددة في نص

- write a diary entry to express feelings and mood.

يكتب مدونة يومية يعبر عن مشاعره ومزاجه

- research and make a poster about a famous traveler.

يقوم بعمل بحث ويصنع ملصقًا عن سياح مشهور

- The longest journey on foot was George Meegan's walk from Tierra Del Fuego in Argentina to Alaska. It was 30,608 km long and he completed it in 2,425 days between 1977 and 1983.

- The **\*record** for the longest journey by sea was set by Reid Stowe, who sailed across the ocean in a sea journey that **\*lasted** 1152 days.

\* record

رقم قياسي

\* lasted

استمرت





### He Went By Ship

ذهب بالسفينة



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

### Main vocabulary



go on a voyage

يذهب في رحلة بحرية



ride a camel

يركب جملاً



travel by train

يسافر بالقطار



sail by ship

يبحر بالسفينة



take a trip

يقوم برحلة قصيرة



go on a journey

يذهب في رحلة طويلة

### Famous explorers

مستكشفون مشاهير



Ibn Battuta

ابن بطوطة

1304 – 1368



Vasco da Gama

فاسكو دا جاما

1460 – 1524



Marco Polo

ماركو بولو

1254 – 1324



### Extra vocabulary

explorer	مستكشف	travel diary	مذكرات السفر
vacation	إجازة	Croatia	كرواتيا
museum	متحف	Korcula	جزيرة كورتشولا
travels	سفرات / رحلات	Italian (adj.)	إيطالي
the West	العرب	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
experiences	خبرات / تحارب	Venice	فينيسيا
Iran	إيران	Hormuz	مضيق هرمز
ancient (adj.)	قديم	objects	أغراض

### Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

Present	Past
sail	يسبح sailed

#### أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past
imagine	يتخيل imagined

#### Irregular verbs

Present	Past
get to	يصل إلى got to

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past
fly	يطير / يسافر بالطائرة flew

### Expressions and Phrases

That's a good idea.	هذه فكرة جيدة.	get to	يصل إلى
far away	بعيدًا	took years	استغرقت سنوات
What an adventure!	يالها من مغامرة!	come to life	تعود للحياة

### Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Ibn Battuta was a famous (guide – explorer – doctor – sailor).
- 2 She enjoyed riding the (boat – ship – camel – train) across the desert.
- 3 I (take – ride – sail – write) a trip every year.
- 4 I think they (traveled – rode – sailed – made) by train.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Rana

What are you reading, Injy?

ماذا تقرئين يا إنجي؟



Injy

Oh hi, Rana. It's my travel diary. I want to remember my family's vacation in Croatia a few years ago.

أوووه، أهلاً رنا! إنها مذكرات السفر الخاصة بي. أريد أن أتذكر إجازة عائلتي في كرواتيا منذ عدة سنوات.



Rana

That's a good idea. What was your favorite thing about the vacation?

هذه فكرة جيدة. ماذا كان أفضل شيء بالنسبة لك في تلك الإجازة؟



Injy

I think it was visiting the Marco Polo Museum.

أعتقد أن الشيء المفضل كان زيارة متحف ماركو بولو.



Rana

Really? Where is that?

حقاً؟ أين هو؟



Injy

It's on an island in Croatia called Korcula. We took a trip there. It's a really interesting museum all about the travels of Marco Polo.

إنه على جزيرة في كرواتيا تدعى كورتشيلدا. ذهبنا في رحلة إلى هناك. إنه حقاً متحف رائع عن كل سفريات ماركو بولو.



Rana

Who was Marco Polo?

من هو ماركو بولو؟



Injy

He was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13<sup>th</sup> century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called *The Travels of Marco Polo*.

هو مستكشف إيطالي وهو من أوائل الأشخاص من العرب الذين زاروا الصين. ذهب هناك في القرن الـ 13 وكتب مذكرات عن حبراته. إنها تسمى «رحلات ماركو بولو».



Rana

How did people get to China in those days? It's very far away.  
You couldn't just fly there, or travel by train!

كيف تمكن الناس من الوصول إلى الصين في تلك الأيام؟ إنها بعيدة جدًا. لا يمكنك السفر بالطائرة أو بالقطار!

It was very difficult – the journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China!

كان الأمر صعبًا جدًا - استغرقت الرحلة سنوات! سافر ماركو بولو في رحلة طويلة عبر البحر. أبحر بالسفينة من فينيسيا لجزيرة كورتشولا ثم إلى إيران. عندما وصل إلى مضيق هرمز، توقف وذهب عبر الصحراء. ركب جملاً طوال الطريق إلى الصين.

Injy



Rana

Wow, what an adventure!

واو، يالها من معامرة!

Yes, and imagine arriving in China almost 800 years ago! It was so different then. The museum had a lot of things from ancient China. It really made the story of Marco Polo come to life.

نعم، وتخيلي الوصول إلى الصين قبل ٨٠٠ عام! كان الأمر مختلفًا تمامًا وقتها. المتحف احتوى على العديد من الأشياء من الصين القديمة. لقد جعل حقًا قصة ماركو بولو تعود للحياة.

Injy



### Vocabulary Check

كلمة **travel** قد تأتي كفعل أو كاسم.

e.g. Marco Polo **traveled** to China. (فعل)

It's my **travel** diary. (اسم)

- هناك فرق بين (trip – journey – voyage)

**trip** إنها السفر من مكان إلى آخر، من أجل الاستمتاع أو العمل، عادة لفترة قصيرة.

**journey** إنها السفر من مكان إلى آخر، عادة لفترة طويلة، عبر الجو، البحر، أو البر.

**voyage** الذهاب إلى مكان، فقط عبر البحر.

- لاحظ الفرق بين (**diary**) وتعني مذكرة و (**dairy**) وتعني منتجات الألبان.

- لاحظ استخدام (**by**) مع وسائل المواصلات:

e.g. He sailed to China **by** ship.



### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Rania has an interesting travel .....
- 2 They visited the Marco Polo .....
- 3 The museum is all about the ..... of Marco Polo.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 A What are you reading?
  - 2 Vasco da Gama was ...
  - 3 Marco Polo went across the desert.
  - 4 The museum is on an island ...

- B**
- a. ( ) He rode a camel to China.
  - b. ( ) It's all about the travels of Marco Polo.
  - c. ( ) B: It's my travel diary.
  - d. ( ) called Korcula.
  - e. ( ) a famous explorer in the past.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Marco Polo was an Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13<sup>th</sup> century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called "*The Travels of Marco Polo*". Marco Polo's journey to China was very difficult. The journey took years! Marco Polo went on a long voyage by sea. He sailed by ship from Venice to Korcula, and then on to Iran. When he got to Hormuz, he stopped and went across the desert. He rode a camel all the way to China.

**Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 A "voyage" is a trip across the .....  
 a) forest                      b) desert                      c) sea                      d) land
- 2 The underlined word "there" refers to .....  
 a) Venice                      b) China                      c) Korcula                      d) Iran



**Answer the following questions:**

3 When did Marco Polo visit China?

4 How was Marco Polo's journey to China?

**4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

1 Injy – What – reading, – are – you?

2 took – Tne – years – China – to – journey.

3 is – The museum – called – on – Korcula – an island.

4 an – Marco – Italian – Polo – was – explorer.

**5 Punctuate the following:**

How did people get to china those days

**6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

مجاپ سنه  
آخر الكتاب

"Marco Polo"

Italian explorer – wrote a diary



### A Surprising Discovery



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

#### Main Vocabulary

discovery	اكتشاف	clay	طين	archaeologists	علماء الآثار
tools	أدوات	advanced (adj.)	متطور	inspiration	إلهام

#### Extra Vocabulary

surprising (adj.)	مفاجئ	Nok	قرية نوك	Nigeria	نيجيريا
West Africa	غرب إفريقيا	unusual (adj.)	غير عادي	sculptures	منحوتات
style	طرز	complicated (adj.)	معقد	quality	جودة
incredible (adj.)	مذهل	farming tools	أدوات زراعية	stone	حجر
iron	حديد	culture	ثقافة	BCE	قبل الميلاد
CE	الحقبة الميلادية	civilization	حضارة	ability	قدرة
Ife people	شعب «الإيف»	century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	mystery	سر غامض / لغز

#### Conjugation of verbs

##### Regular verbs

##### أفعال منتظمة

##### Present

agree

##### Past

يوافق

agreed

##### Present

believe

##### Past

يعتقد

believed

#### Expressions and Phrases

in a sitting position

في وضعية الجلوس

find out more

يكتشف المزيد

an area of hundreds of kilometers

منطقة على مساحة مئات الكيلومترات

call ... after

يسمى على اسم

#### Definitions

clay	a type of earth that is sticky when wet	نوع من الأرض يكون لرنًا حبيما يكون مبتلاً
inspiration	an example others use to help create new ideas	مثال يساعد الآخرين على خلق أفكار جديدة
tools	objects we use to make or do things	أغراض نستخدمها لصنع أو عمل أشياء
sculptures	art made from stone or wood	فن مصنوع من الحجارة أو الخشب
advanced	modern or well developed	حديث أو مطور جيداً
archaeologist	a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground	الشخص الذي يقوم بدراسة أشياء قديمة جدًا وجدها أسفل الأرض
mystery	something that people can not understand or explain	شيء لا يستطيع الناس فهمه أو تفسيره



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Almost 100 years ago, **local people** <sup>(1)</sup> in the small **village** <sup>(2)</sup> of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a sitting position with their hands on their legs. The quality of the work was incredible.

قبل ما يقرب من ١٠٠ عام، عثر السكان المحليون في قرية نوك الصغيرة في نيجيريا، وهي دولة تقع في غرب إفريقيا، على بعض الأشياء غير العادية تحت الأرض. كانت هذه القطع الفنية منحوتات طينية جميلة على هيئة أشكال بشرية. كانت المنحوتات جميعها بنفس النمط: كان لديهم عيون كبيرة وأنماط شعر معقدة. وعادة ما كانوا في وضع الجلوس مع وضع أيديهم على أرجلهم. كانت جودة العمل مذهلة.

(1) السكان المحليون  
(2) قرية

A team of archaeologists went to the area to find out more. They found many **similar** <sup>(3)</sup> sculptures in an area of hundreds of kilometers around Nok. There were also iron and stone farming tools. The archaeologists agreed these were most likely from a very advanced culture from **around** <sup>(4)</sup> 500 BCE to 200 CE. It was a civilization which had the **ability** to work iron and stone to make tools, and which made beautiful **art** <sup>(5)</sup>.

توجه فريق من علماء الآثار إلى المنطقة لاكتشاف المزيد. وجدوا العديد من المنحوتات المماثلة في منطقة تبلغ مئات الكيلومترات حول نوك. كانت هناك أيضًا أدوات زراعة من الحديد والحجارة. وقد اتفق علماء الآثار على أن هذه كانت من ثقافة متقدمة جدًا من حوالي ٥٠٠ سنة قبل الميلاد إلى ٢٠٠ سنة ميلادية. كانت تلك الحضارة لديها القدرة على العمل بالحديد والحجر لصنع الأدوات، والتي جعلت الفن جميلًا.

(3) متشابه  
(4) حوالى  
(5) فن

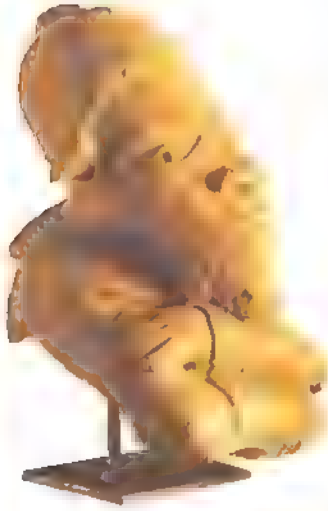


السابق

(6)

(7)

معلومات مكتوبة



They called this culture the "Nok" civilization, after the village where sculptures were found. Some believe that the sculptures were the inspiration for the famous works of art by the later<sup>(6)</sup> Ife people, who were in Nigeria from the 11<sup>th</sup> to the 15<sup>th</sup> century CE. The Ife were famous for making beautiful metal sculptures of human heads. However, there is no written information<sup>(7)</sup> about the Nok people, so we can only learn about them from their art. Their culture is still a mystery today.

وأطلقوا على هذه الثقافة اسم «حصارة نوك» على اسم القرية التي تم العثور فيها على المحوتات. يعتمد البعض أن المحوتات كانت مصدر إلهام للأعمال الفنية الشهيرة لشعب «الإيف» الذين كانوا في نيجيريا من القرن الحادي عشر إلى القرن الخامس عشر. اشتهر شعب «الإيف» بصنع محوتات معدنية جميلة للرؤوس البشرية. ومع ذلك، لا توجد معلومات مكتوبة عن النوك، لذلك لا يمكننا التعرف عليهم إلا من خلال أعمالهم الفنية؛ حيث لا تزال ثقافتهم لغزًا إلى اليوم.

### Check point

1 Which two cultures are mentioned?

SB

2 Where did the name "Nok" come from?

### Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة (surprised) ويعني مندهشًا والصفة (surprising) وتعني مندهشًا.

e.g. I was surprised at your present.

It was a very surprising discovery.

- لاحظ أن (discover) هي (فعل) بمعنى يكتشف، وأن (discovery) هو (اسم) بمعنى اكتشاف.

- لاحظ أن ..

(BCE) هي الوقت ما قبل العام الأول الميلادي.

(CE) هي الوقت منذ العام الأول الميلادي وما يليه.



The form of the past simple verbs is the same with all subjects, apart from "be".

لا يختلف تكوين الأفعال في زمن الماضي البسيط مع كل الضمائر، باستثناء الفعل «be».

## فعل "يكون" في زمن الماضي البسيط Verb to "be" in the past simple

### Affirmative sentence: الجملة المباشرة

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **was** ...

Fares **was** angry with his brother yesterday.

كان فارس غاضبًا من أخيه أمس.

We / They / You / اسم جمع + **were** ...

Nader and Walid **were** in my class last year.

كان نادر ووليد في فصلی العام الماضي.

### Negative sentence: الجملة المنفية

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **was not (wasn't)** ...

The water in the sea **wasn't** warm.

المياه في البحر لم تكن دافئة.

We / They / You / اسم جمع + **were not (weren't)** ...

We **weren't** at school last Friday.

لم تكن في المدرسة الجمعة الماضية.

### Yes/No question: السؤال بنعم/لا

question: السؤال	Was	I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد ...?
	Were	we / they / you / اسم جمع ...?

Answer: الإجابة	Yes,	subject (فاعل)	was / were.
	No,		wasn't / weren't.

A: **Was** she happy in New York?

B: No, she **wasn't** happy there.

### Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- I think she (go – goes – went – going) to her friends' apartment last week.
- They (don't – aren't – doesn't – didn't) come to the party yesterday.
- (Was – Were – Is – Are) they at the club last weekend?



### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 The works of art were beautiful clay ..... of humans.
- 2 The sculptures had ..... eyes.
- 3 These sculptures were in a ..... position.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Hundred years ago, there ..... a discovery in the village of Nok.  
a) is                      b) did                      c) was                      d) were
- 2 A team of ..... went to explore the area where the sculptures were.  
a) doctors                      b) actors                      c) archeologists                      d) nurses
- 3 “.....” means modern or well developed.  
a) Advanced                      b) Clay                      c) Tools                      d) Sculptures
- 4 My family ..... on vacation last year.  
a) go                      b) goes                      c) went                      d) going

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 “Clay” is a type of earth ...
  - 2 The archaeologists found ...
  - 3 “Inspiration” is an example others use ...
  - 4 The sculptures were ...

- B**
- a. ( ) many old farming tools.
  - b. ( ) to help create new ideas.
  - c. ( ) that is sticky when wet.
  - d. ( ) the village of Nok.
  - e. ( ) all in the same style.

#### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 have – a lot – Did – homework – he – of?

2 of – The quality – the – incredible – work – was.

3 week – went – the – to – She – last – library.

4 stone – farming – There – tools – iron – were – and.

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

the water in the sea wasn't warm.

#### 6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجالس  
أحرر الكتاب

##### "Nok civilization"

Where is Nok? in Nigeria, a country in West Africa

What did local people find? some unusual objects under the ground



### Moren Polo creates the Desert

يعبر ماركو باولو الصحراء



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

### Main Vocabulary

fascinated (adj.)	منبهر	dromedaries	جمال ذات سنام واحد	caravan	قافلة
wasteland	أرض قاحلة	legends	أساطير		

### Extra Vocabulary

Gobi Desert	صحراء جوبي	sand dunes	كتبان رملية	step	خطوة
ocean	محيط	Lop Nur	قرية لوب نور	mysterious (adj.)	غامض
noises	ضوضاء	voices	أصوات (بشرية)	frightening (adj.)	مخيف
Noah Oasis	واحة نوح	exhausted (adj.)	مُتعب	direction	اتجاه

### Conjugation of Verbs تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
move	يتحرك / moved	change	يتغير / changed
roll	يلتف / rolled	sway	يتمايل / swayed
last	يدوم / يستمر / lasted		

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
know	يعرف / knew	leave	يفادر / left

### Expressions and Phrases

slowly up and down	ببطء لأعلى ولأسفل	over the ocean	عبر المحيط
boiling hot	شديد السخونة	freezing cold	شديد البرودة
went on	استمر	lost long ago	تأته منذ فترة طويلة
on the horizon	في الأفق	interested in	مهتم بـ



### Definitions

fascinated by	very interested in	مهتم جدًا بشيء
caravan	a group of camels and people traveling together	مجموعة من الناس والجمال يسافرون معًا
swaying	moving from side to side	يتحرك من جانب إلى آخر
wasteland	a landscape where nothing lives	مكان طبيعي لا يعيش فيه شيء
wandered	walked about without a direction	يمشي بلا اتجاهات محددة
legend	a very old famous story	قصة قديمة جدًا ومشهورة





## Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves<sup>(1)</sup>. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language<sup>(2)</sup>.

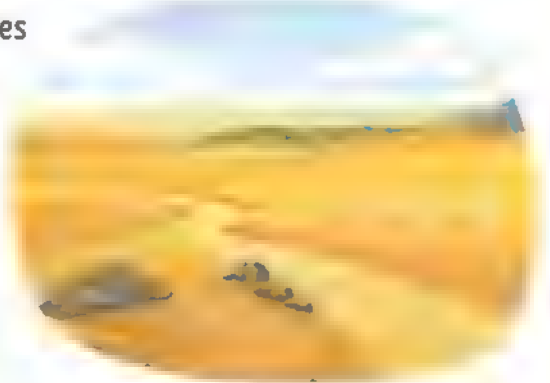


كان ماركو بولو في الواحد وعشرين من عمره في عام ١٢٧٥ عندما دخل في صحراء جوبي لأول مرة. كان مهوواً بالكنائس البرصية التي سقطت مع كل خطوة صنعها الحمار. وحيدة السهم، وكان طول بعض الكثبان الرملية ستين متراً وطولها أفقيًا ٢٠ متراً، وكانت أشكالها تتغير دائماً. الرياح جعلتهم يتحركون ويلتقون مثل الأمواج الصفراء الضخمة. في الواقع، أطلق السكان المحليون اسم «البحر الجاف» على صحراء جوبي في لغتهم الخاصة.

The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty<sup>3</sup> wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no water.

تحركت الجمال وحيدة السهم في اتجاهية بطء في أعلى وسفح الكثبان الرملية، متموجة مثل السفن تكسره قوى المحيط، ذهبوا نحو أبوب نور، القرية الأخيرة قبل رص الصحراء، القرعة عرف ماركو أنه بعد هذا مكان، لم يكن هناك شيء لآلاف الكيلومترات لا أشخاص ولا نباتات ولا ماء.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold – sometimes there was snow. They went on silently<sup>(4)</sup>, but often the wind made strange noises<sup>5</sup>, like voices singing and drums playing far away<sup>(6)</sup>. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still ...



كان مكان غامض وحظير، في النهار، كان شديد سخونة، في ليل، كان شديد برودة. في بعض الأحيان كان هناك ثلج. السهم مسكسقول بصف، ولكن في كثير من الأحيان كانت الرياح تصدر أصوات غريبة، مثل أصوات الغناء ويطول التي تعرف بعيدا، كانت هناك قصص عن هذه الصحراء. في بعض الأحيان يقولون أن المسافرين الذين فقدوا منذ فترة طويلة في الصحراء ما زالوا يتجولون هناك ...





Before they left Lop Nur, Marco **made sure**<sup>7</sup> they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After **exactly**<sup>8</sup> thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

تأكد

(7)

بالضبط

(8)

قبل أن يغادروا (لوب نور)، تأكد من لديهم ما يكفي من الطعام و الماء لثلاثين يوماً. بعد ثلاثين يوماً بالضبط من السفر عبر هذه الأرض الفارغة والمحيفة، رأوا أخيراً الخط الأخضر لبحر نوح على الأفق. لم يكن لديهم ماء ولا بقايا طعام وكانت الحيوانات متعبة، ولكن تلك المغامرة قد انتهت وقد كانوا في الصين.

### Check point

1 When did Marco Polo go to the Gobi Desert?

2 What was the name the local people called this desert?

SB





## Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

mysterious (adj.)	غامض	ship	سفينة	port	ميناء
possible (adj.)	ممکن	cabin	كابينة / مقصورة	news	أخبار

boring (adj.)	ممل	terrible (adj.)	فظيخ	telescope	تليسكوب
sandy (adj.)	ملء بالرمال	palm trees	أشجار النخيل	center	مركز
hope	أمل	light	ضوء	quite	إلى حد ما
relaxing (adj.)	مريح	captain	قائد	diary	مُذكرة

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Present

## Past

## Present

## Past

explore

يستكشف

explored

seem

يبدو

seemed

## Expressions and Phrases

long walks	المشي لمسافات طويلة	pass the time	يمرر الوقت
a bit clearer	أكثر وضوحًا قليلًا	come up	تشرق

## Vocabulary Check

- لاحظ الفرق بين (quiet) بمعنى هادئ و (quite) بمعنى إلى حد ما.

e.g. My teacher asked me to be **quiet**.It's **quite** hot outside.

- لاحظ أن (sleep) قد تأتي فعل بمعنى (نام) أو اسم بمعنى (النوم).

e.g. I had quite a relaxing **sleep** in my cabin last night. (noun)She usually **sleeps** for 8 hours every day. (verb)

Listening Script



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

January 17

Today was a long, boring day with terrible weather. The ship didn't leave the port, so my journey to the mysterious island wasn't possible<sup>(1)</sup>. I can see the island through my telescope. The beaches are white and sandy with many palm trees and there are green mountains at its center. It's exciting to imagine<sup>(2)</sup> what I could find there. I'm sure I'll travel there soon.

(1)

محتمل

(2)

يتخيل

١٧ يناير: كان اليوم يومًا مملاً طويلاً مع طقس رهيب. لم تغادر السفينة الميناء، لذلك لم تكن رحلتى إلى الجزيرة الغامضة ممكنة. يمكننى رؤية الجزيرة من خلال التلسكوب الخاص بى. الشواطئ بيضاء ورملية مع العديد من أشجار النخيل وهناك جبال خضراء فى وسطها. من المثير أن أتخيل ما يمكن أن أجده هناك. أنا متأكد من أننى سأسافر هناك قريباً.



The middle

January 19

I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad and there were strong winds. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle in my small cabin. Today the sky is a bit clearer – there is some hope for my journey, perhaps<sup>(3)</sup> – but time seems to move very slowly in this place.

(3)

ربما

١٩ يناير: كنت حزينًا طوال اليوم أمس. كان الطقس لا يزال سيئًا وكان هناك رياح قوية. ذهبت للمشي لمسافات طويلة حول السفينة لتمرير الوقت خلال اليوم. فى المساء، لم يكن لدى ما أفعله سوى قراءة كتابى على ضوء شمعة فى مقصورتى الصغيرة. اليوم السماء أكثر وضوحًا. هناك بعض الأمل فى رحلتى ربما - ولكن يبدو أن الوقت يتحرك ببطء شديد فى هذا المكان.

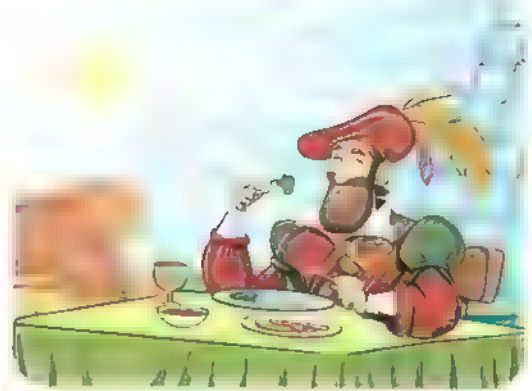




## The end

## January 21

I had quite a relaxing sleep in my cabin last night, and this morning I had breakfast with the others on the ship. In the afternoon, there was good news from the captain: tomorrow, the weather will be good with no wind, so we can go to the island in the morning. The ship will **leave**<sup>4</sup> when the sun comes up. I'm very excited: soon I can **explore** the mysterious island!



تغادر  
(4)

٢١ يناير: تمت نومًا مريحًا وهدوءًا في مقصورتي الليلة الماضية، وفي هذا الصباح تناولت وجبة الإفطار مع الآخرين على متن السفينة بعد الظهر، كانت هناك أخبار جيدة من القبطان، حيث يقول إن الطقس غدًا سيكون جيدًا بدون رياح، لذلك يمكننا الذهاب إلى الجزيرة في الصباح. سنعادر سفينة عندما يشرق الشمس أنا متحمس للغاية: قسرعدن ما يمكنني استكشاف الجزيرة الغامضة!



The story is a page from an 18<sup>th</sup> century writer's diary.

انقصة عبارة عن صفحة من مذكرات كاتب في القرن الثامن عشر.

## Check point

1 How was the island he saw through the telescope?

.....

2 What did he do on January 19?

.....

3 How did the writer describe the island?

.....

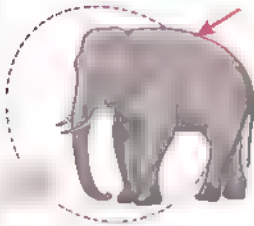
SB



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

/dʒ/



huge

صخم



fridge

ثلاجة



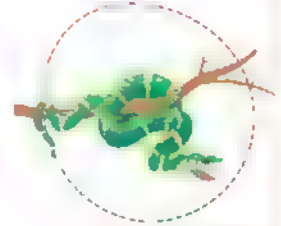
age

عمر سن



joke

مكده



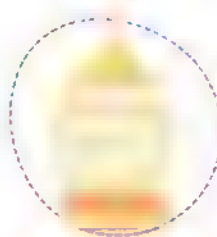
dangerous

خطير



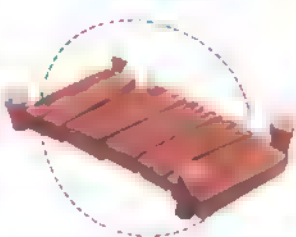
language

لغة



cage

قفس



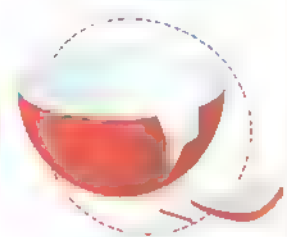
bridge

جسر



village

قرية



damaged

مخطم



Jerry

(جيري) اسم شخص



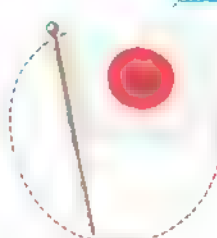
arrange (v)

يرتب



luggage

أمتعة



Japan

اليابان

/ʒ/



measure (v.)

قيس



treasure

كنز



usually

عادة



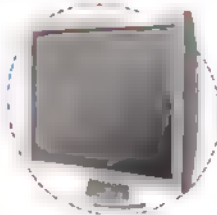
leisure

وقت فراغ



Asia

آسيا



television

تلفزيون



pleasure

متعة



### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 The story was a page from an 18<sup>th</sup> century writer's .....
- 2 The writer had a ..... sleep at his cabin last night.
- 3 The next day, the ship left the ..... to a mysterious island.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 "Caravan" is when a group of camels ...
  - 2 "Wasteland" is a landscape ...
  - 3 Marco Polo was twenty one ...
  - 4 By day, the empty wasteland was boiling hot, ...

- B**
- a. ( ) where nothing lives.
  - b. ( ) by night, it was freezing cold.
  - c. ( ) enough water and food.
  - d. ( ) and people traveling together.
  - e. ( ) when he went to the Gobi Desert.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Marco Polo was twenty one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes which moved with each step the dromedaries made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert "the dry sea" in their language. The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the sand dunes.

#### Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Local people called the Gobi Desert .....  
 a) the big tree                      b) the wet ocean  
 c) the dry sea                      d) the dark place
- 2 The underlined word "dromedaries" is a type of .....  
 a) caravans                      b) people                      c) camels                      d) sand dunes

**Answer the following questions:**

3 When did Marco Polo go to the Gobi Desert?

4 Summarize the main idea of the passage in two sentences.

**Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

1 moved – slowly – The dromedaries – in the – caravan.

2 leave – The ship – port – yesterday – the – didn't.

3 read – cabin – I – a book – in – my.

4 waves – Sand – dunes – were – like – yellow – huge.

**Punctuate the following:**

she was sad all day yesterday

**Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

منها ما  
آخر الكتاب

**"Gobi Desert"**

How does it look? – What do local people call it?



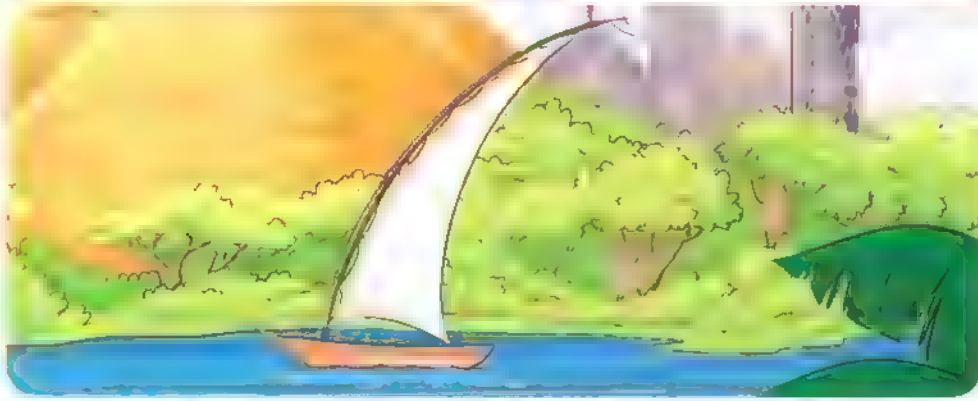


### A diary مذكرة شخصية



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



6 January

Today, I had an amazing **experience** <sup>1</sup> ... I went on a **felucca** on the River Nile! A felucca is a **traditional** <sup>2</sup> Egyptian **sailing boat** <sup>3</sup>. It's made of wood.

A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. A felucca is **difficult** <sup>4</sup> to sail, but Kareem was very strong and had the **skills** <sup>5</sup> to do it. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the **warm** <sup>6</sup> **sunshine** <sup>7</sup>. The boat had two white **sails** <sup>8</sup> which moved **gently** <sup>9</sup> in the wind. It was so quiet and **peaceful** <sup>10</sup> – a lovely way to travel.

We stopped to see some **incredible** <sup>11</sup> things along the way, too. I saw the Pyramids of Giza for the first time in my life. They were **awesome**! <sup>12</sup> The Pyramids were huge and the stones were the color of gold. The Great Pyramid, the tallest of the three Pyramids, is 147 meters high. It was wonderful.

In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch **on board the felucca** <sup>13</sup> and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an **oud** <sup>14</sup>. He played beautifully and the music was **magical** <sup>15</sup> and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

- (1) تجربة
- (2) تقليدي/شعبي
- (3) مركب شراعي
- (4) صعب
- (5) مهارات
- (6) دافئ
- (7) شعاع الشمس
- (8) شراع
- (9) برفق
- (10) مسالم
- (11) مذهش
- (12) رائع
- (13) على ظهر الفلوكة
- (14) آلة العود
- (15) سحري

٦ يناير

لقد مررت اليوم بتجربة مذهلة ... ذهبت إلى رحلة بالفلوكة في نهر النيل! الفلوكة هي قارب شراعي مصري تقليدي، مصوع من الخشب. كان هناك رجل طويل يدعى كريم هو كبره من العرب من صنعته لاجار بالفيوكه، لا كريم كان قوب حذاً وبنده بمهذب لاجاره بلغم بذلك كانت الرحلة مذهلة ذهبت ببطء في النهار في أشعة لشمس لدافئة، كان قارب يحوي على سر عتي لونهما أشص يحركان بنصف في الرياح الدافئة. كانت المركب هادئة ومسالمة للغاية - يا لها طريقة جميلة للسفر. توقفنا في بعض الأماكن المدهشة على طول الطريق، أيضاً، رأيت هياكلت اجبره لأول مرة في حياتي، كانت رائعة! كانت لأهرامات صحمه والأحجار بلون الذهب. الهرم الكبير، أطول الأهرامات الثلاثة، يبلغ ارتفاعه ١٤٧ متراً، كان رائعاً. بعد الظهر، تناولت وجبة عشاء لذيذة على ميني الفيوكه، وكان هناك رجل يعزف الموسيقى لمصرية بنفسه على عود، عزف بشكل جميل وكانت الموسيقى ساحرة ومريحة، يا له من يوم! لقد مررت بتجربة رائعة للغاية!



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

## How to write a diary

A diary has features that are different from other types of text.

المذكرة الشخصية لها خصائص مختلفة عن أنواع النصوص الأخرى.

**A**

It usually has short paragraphs, each one about what happened on a single day.

عادة ما تحتوي على فقرات قصيرة، كل فقرة حول ما حدث في يوم منفرد.

**B**

It is usually written in an informal style and uses first-person pronouns (I, we, my, etc.)

عادة ما تكتب بأسلوب غير رسمي وتستخدم ضمائر المتكلم ( أنا - نحن - لدى).

**C**

It usually describes the writer's thoughts, feelings, and opinions.

عادة ما تصف أفكار الكاتب ومشاعره وآراءه.

**D**

It usually describes people, places, and experiences.

عادة ما تصف الأشخاص والأماكن والتجارب.

e.g.

**Write a diary of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

**“My visit to Alexandria”**

How and when did you go there? – How did you feel about it?

---



---



---



---





### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 We had a delicious lunch on ..... the felucca.
- 2 A man was playing traditional Egyptian music on an .....
- 3 I had such a wonderful .....

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

**A** 1 A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat.

2 The boat had two white sails ...

3 The Pyramids were huge ...

4 The Great Pyramid ...

**B** a. ( ) and the stones were the color of gold.

b. ( ) It's made of wood.

c. ( ) We went slowly down the river.

d. ( ) which moved gently in the wind.

e. ( ) is the tallest of the three Pyramids.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Nadeen. I went on a boat trip with my friends last weekend. A tall, serious man called Adel was the captain of the boat. The trip was amazing. We went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. The boat had two white sails which moved gently in the warm wind. It was so quiet and calm—a lovely way to travel. We listened to music along the way. There was a man who played the flute. He played beautifully and the music was magical. It was a wonderful, peaceful trip.

#### Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Adel was the ..... of the boat.  
a) friend                      b) captain                      c) sail                      d) sunshine
- 2 The underlined word "peaceful" means .....  
a) noisy                      b) loud                      c) frightening                      d) quiet



### Answer the following questions:

3 When did Nadeen and her friends go on a boat trip?

.....

4 What musical instrument did the man play?

.....



### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 is – made – of – The felucca – wood.

.....

2 had – an – experience – Today, – I – amazing.

.....

3 is – The Great – high – Pyramid – 147 – meters.

.....

4 had – We – a delicious – on – lunch – the felucca.

.....



### 5 Punctuate the following:

I had such a wonderful experience in egypt

.....



### 6 Write a diary of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجالس  
أحر الكتاب

#### “My trip to Al-Fayoum”

“fascinated by the waterfall – such a peaceful trip”

.....

.....

.....

.....





# Unit 5

## REVIEW



### Vocabulary



go on a voyage



ride a camel



travel by train



sail by ship



take a trip



go on a journey

### Language Focus

#### Past Simple Tense

##### Affirmative sentence:

Subject (المفعول) + التصريف الثاني للفعل (الماضي) ...



Archaeologists **went** to the area to find out more.

##### Negative sentence:

Subject + **didn't** + (inf) مصدر الفعل ...



We **didn't have** a vacation this year.

##### Yes/No question:

Did + subject + inf مصدر الفعل ?

B. Yes,  
B. No,

subject

did,  
didn't.



A Did Dalida **find** her book?

B Yes, she did

B No, she didn't.

##### Wh- question:

A Question word | did | subject. | (inf مصدر الفعل) ?

B subject (المفعول) + التصريف الثاني للفعل (الماضي) ...



A Where did you **find** your books?  
B I **found** them in my bag.

### Pronunciation

/dʒ/



huge



fridge



age



oke



dangerous



language



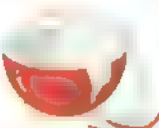
cage



bridge



village



damaged



Jerry



arrange



luggage



Japan

/z/



measure



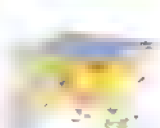
treasure



usually



leisure



Asia



television



pleasure



### Lesson



.....	يركب جملاً	.....	إجازة
.....	يبحر بالسفينة	.....	يقوم برحلة قصيرة
.....	يسافر بالقطار	.....	كرواتيا
.....	يذهب في رحلة بحرية	.....	يذهب في رحلة طويلة
.....	مذكرات سفر	.....	مستكشف

### Lesson



.....	طين	.....	مفاجئ
.....	إلهام	.....	متطور
.....	أدوات	.....	اكتشاف
.....	علماء الآثار	.....	منحوتات
.....	ثقافة	.....	حضارة

### Lesson



.....	منبهر	.....	ضخم
.....	جمال وحيدة السنم	.....	ثلاجة
.....	قافلة	.....	عمر / سن
.....	يتمايل	.....	ثكنة
.....	أرض قاحلة	.....	قرية
.....	يلتف	.....	خطير
.....	كوبرى	.....	لعة
.....	أمتعة	.....	محطم
.....	اليابان	.....	يقبس
.....	كنز	.....	يرتب
.....	عادة	.....	وقت فراغ
.....	تلفزيون	.....	متعة





## How to write about a famous traveler:

- (اسم الرحالة) was a famous traveler.
- He was born in (تاريخ ميلاده).
- (جنسيته) is (اسم الرحالة).
- His most famous journey was to (مكان).
- When he reached (المكان), he (نشاط قام به).
- He wrote his famous diaries that (محتوى المذكرة).

Marco Polo was a famous traveler. He was born in 1254 in Venice.

Marco Polo is Italian. His most famous journey was to China.

When he reached China, he recorded many information about different animals and plants. He wrote his famous diaries that described his journey.

## How to write about experiences in the past:

- I went to + (مكان) with my family/ friends.
- We went by + (وسيلة مواصلات).
- We stayed there for a + (مدة زمنية).
- We enjoyed + (نشاط من الأنشطة).
- We visited + (معالم سياحية).
- My favorite thing was + نشاط because (السبب).

I went to Aswan with my family last year. We went there by train. We stayed there for a week. We enjoyed riding camels and boat sailing. We visited the Elephantine Island and Nubian villages. My favorite thing was boat trips because sailing is my favorite sport.

## How to write a travel diary:

- I went on a trip to + مكان.
- We spent time + نشاط.
- I met a + شخص وصفاته.
- We stopped at + معالم سياحية.
- It was + صفات المعالم السياحية.
- At night, we + نشاط.
- It was + وصف.

Yesterday, I had an amazing experience. I went on a boat trip to Luxor. We spent time sailing in the Nile under the golden sunshine. I met a tall, serious woman called Noha. She was our boat captain. We stopped to see Temples of Abydos. It was tall, ancient, and fascinating. At night, we had dinner at a traditional restaurant. It was quiet and peaceful. The trip was amazing.

**1 Complete the dialog with the correct past simple form of the verb in brackets:**

Sameh : How (1)..... your trip, Kareem? (be)

Kareem : It (2)..... really good, thanks. (be) We (3)..... to the Western Desert. (go).

Sameh : Wow! (4)..... you ..... with your parents? (go)

Kareem : No, I (5)..... with my uncle. (be) We (6)..... some very nice places. (find)

Sameh : (7)..... there any other children on the trip? (be)

Kareem : No, there (8)..... (be) But I (9)..... fun! (have)

**2 Circle the correct answer:**

- 1 Hani didn't (go / went) on the palace tour with the guide.
- 2 A Did your mom (made / make) your dress, Laila? B Yes, she (did / didn't).
- 3 We didn't (have / had) a good meal in that restaurant.
- 4 The water in the sea (weren't / wasn't) warm.
- 5 A Where did you (find / found) your books? B They (was / were) in my bag.

**3 Match the words to their meanings:**

A

- 1 clay
- 2 inspiration
- 3 tools
- 4 sculptures
- 5 advanced
- 6 archaeologist
- 7 mystery

B

- a. ( ) objects we use to make or do things
- b. ( ) art made from stone or wood
- c. ( ) modern or well developed
- d. ( ) a type of earth that is sticky when wet
- e. ( ) a person who studies very old objects that they find under the ground
- f. ( ) something that people can not understand or explain
- g. ( ) an example others use to help create new ideas





### 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

played – enjoyed – liked – went

Yesterday was a fun day. We ..... to the beach and swam in the sea.  
We ate pizza and we ..... handball. After that, we went to the cinema to  
watch a movie. We watched a funny movie and we ate popcorn. We .....  
our time.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They ..... travel to London last year.  
a) don't                      b) didn't                      c) do                      d) doesn't
- 2 He ..... a chocolate cake yesterday.  
a) make                      b) making                      c) made                      d) makes
- 3 A: Were they sad? B: No, they .....  
a) were                      b) aren't                      c) weren't                      d) wasn't
- 4 They ..... to the zoo last weekend.  
a) went                      b) go                      c) going                      d) goes

### 3 Correct the underlined words:

- 1 She be angry with her sister yesterday. (.....)
- 2 Does Sama go to the hospital last Monday? (.....)
- 3 They have a lovely day at the park yesterday. (.....)
- 4 I go to the park to ride my bike two days ago. (.....)

# Test Yourself

30

## UNIT 5

Take a Test!



### Listening

#### 1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

- 1 A felucca is a traditional Chinese sailing boat. ( )
- 2 A felucca is made of wood. ( )
- 3 Kareem was the captain. ( )

#### 2 Listen and complete:

- 1 I was ..... all day yesterday.
- 2 The weather was bad and there were some strong .....
- 3 In the ....., I had nothing to do but read my books.



### Reading

#### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They ..... on a journey to an island called Korcula last year.  
a) go                      b) goes                      c) went                      d) going
- 2 Salma ..... by train last month. She went by plane.  
a) isn't traveling      b) don't travel      c) didn't travel      d) won't travel
- 3 Marco Polo was an Italian .....  
a) scientist              b) doctor              c) explorer              d) archaeologist
- 4 "....." is an example others use to help create new ideas.  
a) Discovery              b) Inspiration              c) Advanced              d) Tools

#### 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

A

- 1 A Were there any kids on the boat?
- 2 The word "swaying" means ...
- 3 A What are you reading, Lama?
- 4 The word "wandered" means ...

B

- a. ( ) walked about without a direction.
- b. ( ) B: No, there weren't any.
- c. ( ) a bad dream.
- d. ( ) moving from side to side.
- e. ( ) B: It's my travel diary.

#### 5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Marco Polo went to the Gobi Desert for the first time in 1275. He went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers.



It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there.

### Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 In 1275, Marco Polo went to the Gobi Desert for the ..... time.  
a) first                      b) second                      c) third                      d) tenth
- 2 The underlined word "legends" means .....  
a) stories                      b) games                      c) songs                      d) poems

### Answer the following questions:

- 3 When did Marco Polo go to the Gobi Desert? .....
- 4 Summarize the main idea of the text in two sentences. ....



### Writing

### 6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 did – How – people – to – get – China?  
.....
- 2 on – They – last – week – went – a vacation.  
.....
- 3 had – The – hair – complicated – sculptures – styles.  
.....
- 4 didn't – want – She – to go – journey – on a.  
.....

### 7 Punctuate the following:

where is Lop Nur

### 8 Write a diary of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه  
أعز الكتاب

"A felucca on the River Nile"

When was the trip? – What did you do?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Assess your progress  
★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

Well done!



## Unit Overview

Student's Book  
ExercisesPractice  
MoreAnswers  
100%

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, research, and write about making things at home and how to take care of him/herself.

talk about quantities.

find the meaning of words in a text.

learn how to pronounce /ə/ in sentences.

learn about personal care in Ancient Egypt.

write instructions to make something and quantities of ingredients.

research and create a poster about different spices.

• نهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون لمتدرب قادراً على أن:

تسمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن عمل الأشياء في المنزل وكيف يعتني بنفسه

يتحدث عن الكميات.

يجد معاني الكلمات في نص.

يتعلم كيفية نطق /ə/ في جمل.

يتعلم عن الاعتناء بالنفس في مصر القديمة.

يبحث ويقوم بعمل ميصق عن كميات المكونات المختلفة.

### Old gold beauty

When you brush your hair, it **\*spreads** the natural oils from your skin through your hair from the roots to the ends. This protects your hair from heat and dirt and makes it look **\*shiny** and healthy.

### Everyday routine

The most popular personal care routines people do every day are having fresh morning showers and using skin cleaners.

\*spread

ينشر

\*shiny

لامع





### Let's make candles!

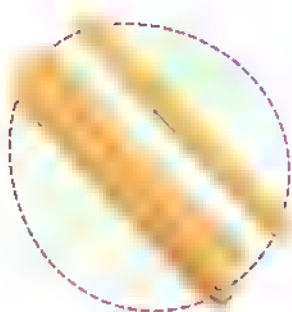
هيا نصنع الشموع



Listen, point, and say:

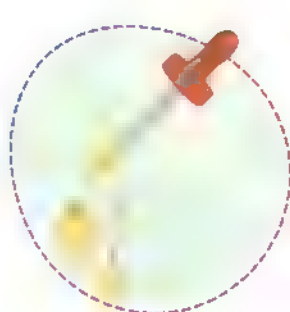
استمع، أشر، وقل:

### Main vocabulary



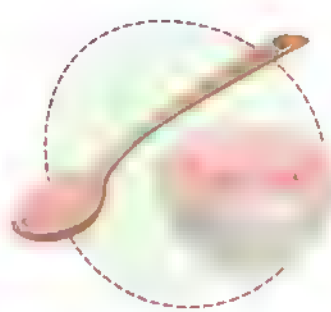
popsicle sticks

عصى المصاصة



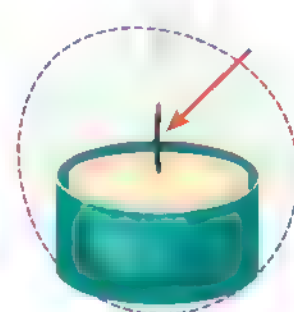
drops

قطرات



wax

شمع



wick

فتيل

### Extra vocabulary

perfume oil

زيت عطري

candles

شموع

instructions

تعليمات

palm wax

شمع النخيل

grams

جرامات

enough (adj.)

كاف

little (adj.)

قليل / صغير

bottle

زجاجة

top

قمة

glass

كوب زجاجي

cotton rope

حبل قطني

step

خطوة

cooker

بوتاجاز

soap crystals

بلورات الصابون

wooden spoon

ملعقة خشبية

hard (adj.)

صلب

soap container

حاوية الصابون

flower petals

بتلات الزهور

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Present

## Past

need	يحتاج	needed
press	يضغط	pressed
melt	ينوب	melted

## Present

## Past

squeeze	يعصر	squeezed
heat	يسخن	heated
stir	يقرب	stirred

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present

## Past

make	يصنع	made
take	يأخذ	took

## Present

## Past

say	يقول	said
hold	يمسك	held

## Expressions and Phrases

have something in mind

تفكر في شيء ما

great idea

فكرة رائعة

smell lovely

رائحته جميلة

Let's see

دعنا نرى



Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (ا) في كلمة (palm) لا ينطق "silent".

## Vocabulary Check

When we listen for **quantities**, we look for numbers and words of measurement.

عندما نستمع إلى **الكميات**، نقوم بالبحث عن أرقام وكلمات القياس.

**eg** kilograms, grams, liters, millimeters, spoons, packages and cans.

## Check point

**Choose the correct answer:**

- 1 The (oil – perfume oil – salt – water) smells lovely.
- 2 (Glasses – Wicks – Sticks – Bottles) are the cotton ropes inside the candles.
- 3 (Stir – Put – Heat – Press) the wax to melt it.
- 4 We need (oil – wood – paper – wax) to make candles.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



Mom

Hi, Laila. I love making things. Why don't we make something new?

مرحبًا ليلي. أنا أحب صنع الأشياء. لماذا لا نصنع شيئًا جديدًا؟

Laila



That's a great idea. Do you have something in mind?

إنها فكرة رائعة. هل تفكرين في شيء ما؟



Mom

I have some perfume oil. We can use it to make candles.

لدي بعض الزيت العطري. يمكننا استخدامه لصنع الشموع.

Laila



Candles? Wow! I love it!

الشموع؟ واو! أنا أحبها!



Mom

Here are the instructions. Can you read them out to me?

ها هي التعليمات. هل يمكنك أن تقرئيها لي بصوت عالٍ؟

Laila



Right. First, we need some wax.

حسنًا. في البداية، نحتاج بعضًا من الشمع.



Mom

Here it is. It's palm wax from Egyptian palm trees. It makes really nice candles. How much do we need?

ها هو، هذا شمع لخل المسحوق من شجر لخل امصريه. به حد يصنع شموعًا لطيفة ما لكمه اسي يحتاجها؟

Laila



It says, "Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles."

التعليمات تقول: «استخدم 450 جرامًا من الشمع لتقوم بعمل ثلاث شموعات.»



Mom

Okay, there's about 500 grams here. That's enough. What's next?

حسنًا، يوجد حوالي 500 جرام هنا. هذا يكفي. ماذا بعد؟

Laila



We need some perfume oil.

نحتاج إلى بعض الزيت العطري.



Mom

Here. These are little bottles of lemon oil. Mmm ... they smell lovely. How much do we need?

ها هي، هذه رجاات صغيرة من زيت الليمون. أممم... إن رائحتها جميلة. ما الكمية الى نحتاجها؟

Laila



The instructions say, "Squeeze in about 40 drops of oil."

التعليمات تقول: «قم بعصر حوالي 40 قطرة من الزيت».



Mom

Fine. And we can take about 15 flowers and press them on the tops of the candles.

حسنًا. ويمكننا أن نأخذ حوالي 15 رهرة ونضغطها في أعلى أسطح الشموع.

Laila



Yes, good idea. Then we need one glass for each candle and one wick – that's the little cotton rope inside the candle.

نعم، إنها فكرة جيدة. سوف نحتاج لكوب زجاجي واحد وفتيل واحد لكل شمعة - إنه ذلك الحبل القطني الصغير بداخل الشمعة.



Mom

Oh, yes. And we need some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.

أوه، نعم. ونحتاج لبعض عصي المصاصة لتثبت الفتيل بداخل الأكواب.

Laila



So that's three glasses, three wicks, and three popsicle sticks, right? Now, what do we need to do first?

إذاً سنحتاج ثلاثة أكواب وثلاث فتائل وثلاث عصي مصاصة، أذلك صحيح؟ ماذا نحتاج لفعل أولًا؟



Mom

Let's see ... "Step one: Heat the wax to melt it, then stir it well."

دعينا نرى... «الخطوة الأولى: قم بتسخين الشمع لإذاته، ثم قلبه جيدًا».

### The instructions for making soap:

تعليمات صنع الصابون:

- 1 Put the ingredients for your soap in a bowl and heat them on a cooker.

صنع مكونات الصابون الخاص بك في وعاء وقم بتسخينها على البوتجاز.

- 2 Next, stir the ingredients with a wooden spoon.

ثم قد تلتب المكونات بسخنة خشبية.

- 3 Take the ingredients off the cooker.

انزع المكونات بعيدًا عن البوتجاز.

- 4 When the ingredients are hard and cool, add them into a soap container.

عندما تصبح المكونات صلبة وباردة، قم بإضافتها في حاوية الصابون.

- 5 You can press flower petals to make the soap look and smell lovely.

يمكنك أن تقوم بصعط تلات ال رهور لجعل شكل الصابون ورائحته جميلة.





### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 First, they needed about 450 grams of ..... to make three candles.
- 2 The lemon ..... smelled lovely.
- 3 They needed three popsicle ..... to hold the wicks.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

**A** 1 Here are the instructions ...

2 Palm wax comes from ...

3 I have this bottle of lemon oil.

4 Heat the wax ...

**B** a. ( ) to melt it.

b. ( ) 40 drops of oil.

c. ( ) for making the candles.

d. ( ) It smells lovely.

e. ( ) Egyptian palm trees.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Here are the instructions for making the candles. First, you need some wax. You can use palm wax that comes from Egyptian palm trees. Use 450 grams of wax to make three candles. You also need some perfume oil. You can use lemon oil. It smells lovely. Squeeze about 40 drops of the oil. You can use flower petals and press them on the top of the candles. First, heat the wax to melt it and stir it well. Put the wax in the glasses. Then, put the wicks inside the glasses. Use popsicle sticks to hold the wicks.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "wicks" means .....  
 a) wooden sticks   b) small bottles   c) cotton ropes   d) perfume oil
- 2 The main idea of the text is about .....  
 a) making candles   b) Egyptian palm trees  
 c) flower petals   d) palm wax

### Answer the following questions:

3 Where does palm wax come from?

4 How many grams of wax do we need to make three candles?

### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 little – bottles – I – have – oil – of – lemon.

2 one – You – need – for each – wick – candle.

3 use – to – We – make – perfume – can – oil – candles.

4 the – to – wax – Heat – it – melt.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

Palm wax comes from egyptian palm trees

### 6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

سجایب  
آلہر و کتاب

“Instructions for making candles”

450 g of wax – 40 drops of oil



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

#### Main vocabulary

barley	شعير	festivals	احتفالات	herbs	أعشاب
--------	------	-----------	----------	-------	-------

#### Extra vocabulary

well	بطريقة جيدة	paintings	رسومات	flood	فيضان
garlic	ثوم	lentils	عدس	wheat	قمح
probably	من المحتمل	geese	إوز	drinks	مشروبات
taste	مذاق	jar	إناء ( برطمان )	occasion	مناسبة

#### Conjugation of verbs

##### Regular verbs

Present		Past		Present		Past	
depend on	يعتمد على	depended on		cook	يطهى	cooked	
preserve	يحفظ	preserved		dry	يجفف	dried	

##### Irregular verbs

Present		Past		Present		Past	
eat	يأكل	ate		drink	يشرب	drank	

#### Expressions and Phrases

take care	يحتنى بـ	for longer	لمدة أطول
-----------	----------	------------	-----------

#### Definitions

barley	a plant whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things نبات يمكننا استخدام بذوره في صنع الخبز وأشياء أخرى
herbs	plants with a strong taste often used in cooking نباتات لها مذاق قوي عادة تستخدم في الطهي
festivals	a special occasion when people play music and eat nice food مناسبة خاصة عندما يعزف الناس الموسيقى ويأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا
preserve	add something to food to make it last for longer إضافة شيء ما للطعام لجعله يدوم لمدة أطول.



## Look and read:

## انظر واقرأ:

Paintings from Ancient Egyptians show that people at this time took care of their bodies and ate very well! So what did the Ancient Egyptians eat and drink?

The water of the Nile has always helped Egyptian farmers to grow a lot of fruit and vegetables. At this time, the vegetables they could grow often depended on how much water came from the Nile floods. Ancient Egyptian farmers usually grew onions, garlic, lentils, and beans and people cooked with all these vegetables. Farmers also grew wheat and barley. People used this to make bread and they ate a lot of this every day.

لنظركم في لوحات المصريين القدماء أن الناس في هذا الوقت كانوا يهتمون بجسمهم ويأكلون جيدًا. فماذا تناولوا؟  
الماء من النيل قد ساعد المصريين على زراعة الكثير من الفواكه والخضروات. في هذا الوقت، كانت الخضروات التي يمكن زراعتها تعتمد على كم المياه التي تأتي من فيضانات النيل. المزارعون في مصر القديمة عادة ما ينموون البصل والثوم والبازيلاء والفاصوليا والعدس. الناس طهروا كل هذه الخضروات. المزارعون أيضًا ينموون القمح والشعير. الناس استخدموا القمح والشعير لصنع الخبز. كانوا يأكلون الكثير منه كل يوم.

Most people in Ancient Egypt only ate a little meat, usually at festivals. They probably ate a few fish and birds like ducks, geese, and chickens. They also ate some eggs and cheese from cows or goats.

There were a lot of bees in Ancient Egypt, and that means there was honey!

People often used honey with bread and cream to make cakes. They also used a few dates or figs to make sweet fruit drinks.

كانت هناك الكثير من النحل في مصر القديمة، وهذا يعني أنه كان هناك عسل!  
الناس عادة ما استخدموا العسل مع الخبز والقشدة لصنع الكعك. الناس أيضًا استخدموا بعض التمر أو التين لصنع مشروبات فواكه حلوة.

Some families also knew how to use spices and herbs to make their cooking taste better, and they also knew how to preserve food. For example, they dried fish or used salt to preserve it, and used jars to keep fruit and vegetables for the winter.

بعض عائلات كانت تعلم كيفية استخدام التوابل والأعشاب لجعل طعامهم طعمه أفضل. كما أنهم كانوا يعرفون كيفية حفظ الطعام. على سبيل المثال، كانوا يجففون السمك أو يستخدمون الملح لحفظه، ويستخدمون الأواني (الزطمانات) لحفظ الفواكه والخضروات لفصل الشتاء.



## Language Focus

### Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

#### Countable nouns:

- هي الأسماء التي (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- الأسماء التي تعد تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

#### Uncountable nouns:

- هي الأسماء التي (لا تعد)، ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الأسماء التي لا تعد لا تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an).

a mango	المانجو	mangoes	sugar	سكر
			traffic	مرور
a store	محل	stores	oil	زيت
a student	طالب	students	juice	عصير
			money	نقود
an apple	تفاحة	apples	homework	واجب منزلي

some/any with countable and uncountable nouns to talk about quantities.

#### some

- تستخدم «some» مع الجمل المباشرة والعرض والطلب.
- There are **some** girls from Luxor in my class. (جملة مباشرة)
- Would you like **some** tea? (عرض)
- Can you buy **some** bread, please? (طلب)

#### any

- تستخدم «any» مع الجمل المنفية والسؤال.
- There aren't **any** tigers in Egypt. (جملة منفية)
- Is there **any** honey left in the jar? (سؤال)

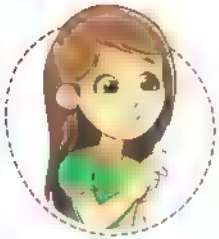
## Asking about quantities

## السؤال عن الكميات

## 1) Asking and answering about quantities of countable things:

السؤال والإجابة عن كميات الأشياء التي تعد:

( Question: )



A: How many + countable noun .... ?

How many lemons do we need for a lemonade?

كم عدد الليمون الذي نحتاج إليه لعصير الليمون؟

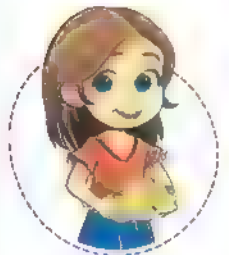
( Answer: )

... (شيء مفرد) + a / an .



B We need a lemon.

... ( five, twenty,... ) رقم a number .



B: We need five lemons.

نحتاج إلى 5 ليمونات.

... some (بعض من)

an approximate amount كمية تقريبية → a few (قليل من) ...

... a lot of (كثير من)



B: We need a few lemons.

نحتاج إلى القليل من الليمون.

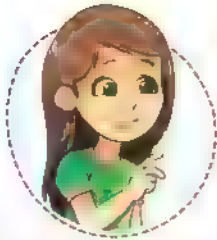
## 2) Asking and answering about quantities of uncountable things:

السؤال والإجابة عن كميات الأشياء غير المحدودة:

السؤال عن كميات الأشياء التي لا تعد بسعة

### Question:

A: **How much** + uncountable noun ...?



**How much oil** do we need? كم كمية الزيت التي نحتاج إليها؟

### Answer:

an approximate amount

some (بعض من) ...

a little (قليل من) ...

a lot of (كثير من) ...



B We need **a little** oil.

نحتاج من قليل من الزيت.

### How to make chocolate chip cookies (makes 12 cookies)

Take 180 grams of **flour**<sup>(1)</sup> and add a little **salt**<sup>(2)</sup>. Mix with 120 grams of **butter**<sup>(3)</sup> and 150 grams of sugar. Add one egg and a few drops of **vanilla essence**<sup>(4)</sup>. Cut 150 grams of dark chocolate into a lot of small **pieces**<sup>(5)</sup>. Stir the chocolate pieces into the **mixture**<sup>(6)</sup>.



- |     |                  |
|-----|------------------|
| (1) | دقيق             |
| (2) | ملح              |
| (3) | زبد              |
| (4) | مستخلص الفانيليا |
| (5) | قطع              |
| (6) | خليط             |

### Check point

Choose the correct answer:

- How (**much** – **many** – **often** – **old**) wax do you need?
- Please hurry. We don't have (**a lot of** – **some** – **a few** – **a little**) time.
- There are (**a few** – **a little** – **any** – **much**) flower petals.

SB



### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Radwa wants to make chocolate chip .....
- 2 She needs 180 ..... of flour.
- 3 She needs a ..... drops of vanilla.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 How ..... milk do you need in your coffee, grandma?  
a) many                      b) often                      c) much                      d) long
- 2 There are ..... of leaves on the tree.  
a) much                      b) a lot                      c) any                      d) little
- 3 How ..... candles can you make?  
a) much                      b) often                      c) many                      d) old
- 4 There isn't ..... bread in the fridge.  
a) some                      b) many                      c) any                      d) a lot of

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 How many math problems ...
  - 2 There aren't ...
  - 3 How much tea do you need?
  - 4 "Preserve" means...

- B**
- a. ( ) B: I need a little more tea.
  - b. ( ) to add something to food to make it last for longer.
  - c. ( ) did you do yesterday?
  - d. ( ) a little oil.
  - e. ( ) any tigers in Egypt.



#### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 many – How – do – you – need – tomatoes?

2 aren't – in – the – There – any – fruits – fridge.

3 also – Farmers – wheat – grew – barley – and.

4 a little – in my – please – I – sugar – Can – have – coffee,?

#### 5 Punctuate the following:

how much milk do you want in your tea, ola?

#### 6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

محتاج منه  
آخر الكتاب

##### “Making chocolate chip cookies”

180 grams of flour – a few drops of vanilla essence



### Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

### Main vocabulary

caretakers	القائمين على الاعتناء بالمكان	crown	تاج	scepter	صولجان (عصا الملك)
throne	عرش	astonished (adj.)	مندهش	dust	تراب

### Extra vocabulary

palace	قصر	precious (adj.)	ثمين	statues	تماثيل
strange (adj.)	غريب	dining room	غرفة الطعام	royal (adj.)	ملي
prince	أمير	princess	أميرة	empty (adj.)	فارغ
dangerously	بشكل خطر	curtains	ستائر	quiet (adj.)	هادئ
hot (adj.)	ساخن	simply	ببساطة	future	مستقبل

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
explore	يستكشف	explored	notice	يلاحظ	noticed
lean	يميل	leaned	knock	يطرق	knocked
explain	يشرح	explained	hurry	يتعجل	hurried
pick	يلتقط	picked	damage	يدمر	damaged

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
find	يجد	found	hear	يسمع	heard
understand	يفهم	understood	fall	يسقط	fell

### Expressions and Phrases

full of	ملىء بـ	at once	في الحال
had to	كان يجب أن	have a bath	يستحم

**The missing king**      الملك المفقود



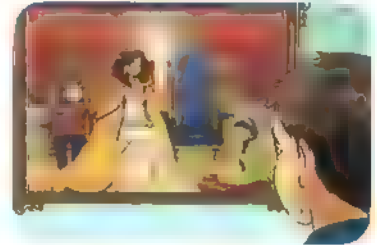
**انظر واقرأ:**

## The beginning

1 Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers.

The palace is old and no one lives there now. Peter likes to explore the rooms. They are **full of** <sup>1</sup> interesting and precious things – old paintings, statues, **carpets** <sup>(2)</sup>, **furniture** <sup>(3)</sup>.

One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the royal children - the prince and the princess - are next to him. But today the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing!



(1) ملء بـ

(2) سجاد

(3) أثاث

يعيش بئر في قصر كبير حيث يكون والداه هما القائمين على الاعتناء بالمكان، القصر قديم ولا أحد يعيش هناك الآن، يحب بئر اكتشاف العرف، إنها مليئة بالأشياء المثيرة للاهتمام والتمنية - كاللوحات القديمة والتماثيل والسجاد والأثاث،

١٠ - بعد من اذبح عبيد من هذه المملكة ولاطغان فيكخور الاعتر والاميرة حاضره يكن ليوم مكال اصل في اليوم ف ع يه يصفوه

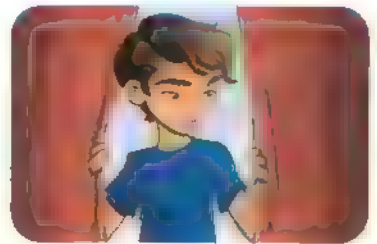
## The middle

2 Peter is surprised and looks carefully at the painting again.

He can see the crown and scepter, but not the king. Also, the scepter is leaning dangerously over the princess's head.

∴ Peter knows he must find the king at once!

He goes through all of the rooms in the palace. He looks behind doors and curtains. Finally, he comes to the royal bathroom. He hears singing and knocks on the door. "Who is it?" says the king. "Please be quiet! I'm enjoying a hot bath!" Peter is astonished. When the king comes out, he says to him, "I spend years sitting in that painting and no one ever comes to wash the dust off me. Dust damages the painting. so I simply had to have a bath."



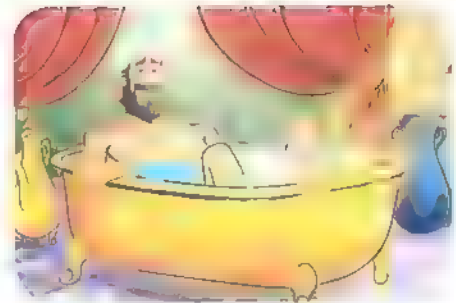
الضاح يسر ويسر بغيره في ملاحقه حرب جري بتمكده يابنه اسحق واشموئيل، ولكنهم ليس بمتعبين بما في الصلوات نفس بشكل مضطرب لي من الأضيقه الصعيرة! يعرف بتمر أنه يجب أن يجد الملك في الحال!

ثم يجمع حرف في سطر ينظر خلف لآلوت و سائر واحسب. يس إلى الحمار امالك. يسمع صوت لعداء. يظرق على اسب من شه ١٢. يقول الملك. «من فضلك كن هادئاً! أنا أستمتع بحمار ساحن!». يتر مددهش. عندما يخرج الملك، يقول له: «لقد أصيب سواب جالساً في تلك اللوحة ولم أت أحد أبداً لمعسل العمار غير». العبار يذمر اللوحة. لذلك كان على بيساطة أن أسبحم.\*

## The end

3

Peter understands but explains to the king that his scepter is about to fall on the princess. "Thank you, my boy," the king says. "I will hurry back. But in the future, please clean the paintings in the palace. Otherwise, they'll be damaged forever!" and he runs back to the painting to pick up the scepter.



Peter now cleans all the paintings in the palace so that they aren't damaged - and so that no one has to leave their painting to have a good bath!

شهد سمر تكتة تسرح عتسه . سمر تكتة تسرح عتسه . سمر تكتة تسرح عتسه . سمر تكتة تسرح عتسه . سمر تكتة تسرح عتسه .

تستقبر ، رجلي تفتط عتسه سمر تكتة تسرح عتسه . سمر تكتة تسرح عتسه . سمر تكتة تسرح عتسه . سمر تكتة تسرح عتسه .

الآن يقوم بيتر بتطيف كل اللوحات في القصر حتى لا تصرر وحتى لا يضطر أحد إلى ترك لوحته لأخذ حمام جيد!

### Check point!

1 Why does Peter live in a palace?

SB

2 Where did the king go?

**Tip!**

You can use **pictures** in a story to help you understand new words.

You can also look at the words around an unknown word in a text to help you understand it. For example, is there **an article (a/an/the)** before the word, or an **adjective**?

If there is, it's **a noun**. You can then look at the **sentences** around it and think what the noun could mean in the context.

من الممكن أن نستخدم الصور في القصة لفهم الكلمات الجديدة. من الممكن أيضاً أن ننظر إلى الكلمات حول الكلمة غير المعروفة في النص لتساعدك على فهم الكلمة غير المعروفة. على سبيل المثال هل كان هناك أداة تكرة مثل (a/an /the) قبل الكلمة أو صفة؟

إذا كان هناك شيء من ذلك فهذا يعني أنها اسم. يمكنك أن تتمعن في الجمل حولها وتفكر ماذا يمكن أن يعني هذا الاسم من خلال السياق.





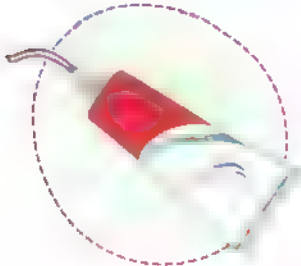
## Social studies

### Ancient Egyptian Traditions



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



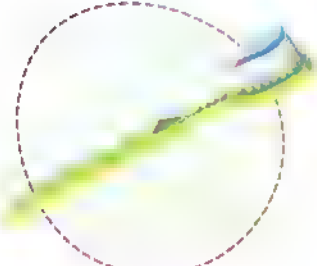
toothpaste  
معجون أسنان



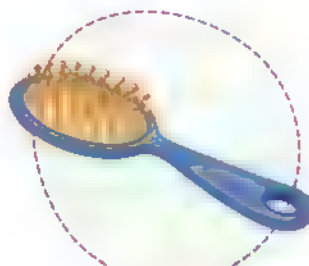
cream  
كريم



soap  
صابون



toothbrush  
فرشاة أسنان



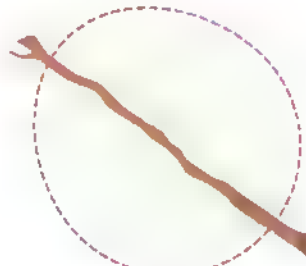
hairbrush  
فرشاة شعر



perfume  
عطر



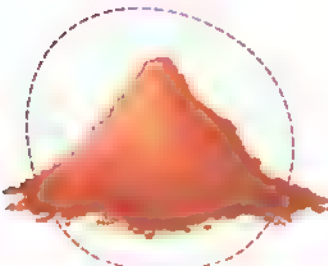
shampoo  
شامبو



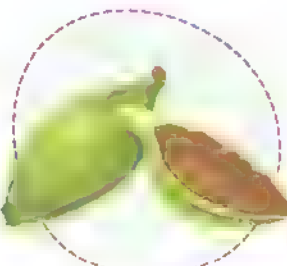
stick  
عصا



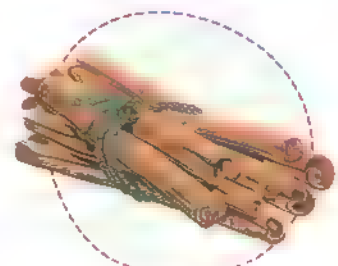
incense  
بخور عطر



powder  
مسحوق



cardamom  
الهيل



cinnamon  
قرفة

## Extra vocabulary

traditions	عادات	personal care	عناية شخصية	products	منتجات
popular (adj.)	شائع (مشهور)	Kapet	كابيت «اسم عطر فرعوني»	expensive (adj.)	غالي الثمن
ingredients	مكونات	common (adj.)	شائع	herbs	أعشاب
rosemary	روزماري (نوع من التوابل)	spices	توابل	cheaper (adj.)	أرخص
minerals	معادن	cone shape	مخروطي الشكل	festivals	احتفالات
mint	نعناع	rock salt	ملح صخري	pepper	فلفل
papyrus	ورق البردي	iris flower	زهرة السوسن	mint candies	حلوى النعناع
melon	شمام (كنتالوب)	pine seeds	بذور الصنوبر		

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Present

## Past

love	يحب	loved
press	يضغط	pressed
rub	يفرك	rubbed

## Present

## Past

mix	يخلط	mixed
tie	يربط	tied
heat	يسخن	heated

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present

## Past

find	يجد	found
leave	يفادر / يترك	left

## Present

## Past

wear	يرتدي	wore
cut	يقطع	cut

## Expressions and Phrases

difficult to find

صعب الحصول عليه

quite strange

غريب إلى حد ما

## Personal care in the past



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Many of the products we use today for personal care were first used in Ancient Egypt!

معظم أدوات العناية الشخصية التي نستخدمها اليوم كانت تستخدم في مصر القديمة!

### Perfumes

The Ancient Egyptians<sup>(1)</sup> loved strong perfumes.

The most popular perfume was called "Kapr".

It was expensive because it had a lot of

ingredients, some of which were difficult<sup>(2)</sup>

to find. But it also had a few common herbs

in it, like rosemary and mint, and spices like

cardamom and cinnamon. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers,

herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream.

Or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. In

Ancient Egyptian paintings you can often see men and women wearing

these perfume cones on their heads at festivals<sup>(3)</sup>!



(1) المصريون القدماء

(2) صعب

(3) احتفالات

العطور:

أحب المصريون القدماء العطور القوية. كان العطر الأكثر شعبية يسمى «كابث». كان مكلفاً لأنه يحتوي على الكثير من

المكونات، وبعضها كان من الصعب العثور عليه. ولكنه يحتوي أيضاً على بعض الأعشاب مثل الروزماري والنعناع، وبعض

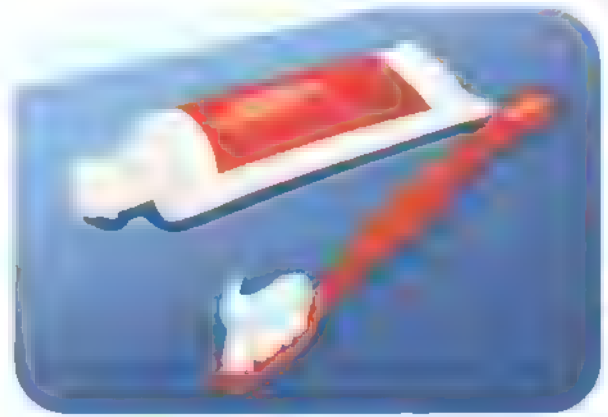
التوابل مثل الهيل والقرقة. صُنعت العطور الأرخص من الزهور والأعشاب وبعض أنواع المعادن، ثم خلطوها مع الزيت

لصنع الكريم، أو صعدوا المكونات الجافة في شكل مخروطي لصنع البخور. في اللوحات المصرية القديمة يمكنك رؤية

الرجال والنساء الذين يرتدون مخاريط العطر هذه على رؤوسهم في المهرجانات!

## Toothpaste

To clean their teeth, Ancient Egyptians used a type of toothbrush – a **stick<sup>(4)</sup>** with small pieces of papyrus tied to it **at one end**. The ingredients of their toothpaste were a mint, rock salt, pepper, and dried iris flowers. They put this dry **powder<sup>(5)</sup>** directly onto their teeth and rubbed it **with their toothbrushes**.



معجون الأسنان:

لتنظيف أسنانهم، استخدم المصريون القدماء نوعاً من فرشاة الأسنان - عصا مع قطع صغيرة من البردي مربوطة بها في أحد الطرفين. كانت مكونات معجون الأسنان بحوى على العناب والملح الصخري والفلفل وريحون السوسس المجففة. يضعون هذه البودرة الحادة مباشرة على أسنانهم ويفركونها بفرش الأسنان.



عصا

(4)

(5)

مسحوق

## Breath Mints

To keep their mouths fresh all day, the Ancient Egyptians made mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then they heated the mixture over a fire, left it to cool, and cut it into small square candies.



نفس رائحة العناب:

للحفاظ على رائحة أنفسهم منعشة طوال اليوم، صنع المصريون القدماء حلوى العناب. قاموا بخلط القرع والشمام وبذور الصوبر وبعض المكسرات مع العسل. ثم قاموا بتسخين الخليط فوق النار، وبركوه ليبرد، وقطعوه إلى حلوى مربعة.

## Check point

1 What was the most popular perfume called?

.....

2 What did the Ancient Egyptians use to clean their teeth?

.....





### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the .....
- 2 Peter likes to ..... the empty rooms of the palace.
- 3 They are full of interesting old ....., statues, and furniture.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

**A**

- 1 Ancient Egyptians made cheaper perfumes ...
- 2 The king has a crown on his head ...
- 3 Peter lives in a big palace ...
- 4 Many personal care products that we use today ...

**B**

- a. ( ) with his parents.
- b. ( ) were used in Ancient Egypt.
- c. ( ) from herbs, flowers, and some types of minerals.
- d. ( ) for making candles.
- e. ( ) and a scepter in his hand.

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

One day, Peter notices something strange about the big painting in the dining room. Usually, this colorful painting shows one of the old kings sitting on the throne with a crown on his head and a long scepter in his hand. The queen and the royal children - the prince and the princess- are next to him. But today, the king's place in the painting is empty: he is missing! The scepter of the king was leaning dangerously towards the little princess. So Peter must find the missing king at once.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The king had a ..... on his head.  
 a) princess      b) palace      c) crown      d) scepter
- 2 The big painting is in the .....  
 a) kitchen      b) living room      c) bedroom      d) garden

**Answer the following questions:**

3 What is strange about the painting?

4 Summarize the main idea of the text in two sentences.

**4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

1 Egyptians – mint – The – made – candies – Ancient.

2 about – There – thing – was – a strange – the – painting.

3 find – Where – king – Peter – does – the?

4 cleans – Peter – all the – in the – palace – paintings.

**5 Punctuate the following:**

They mixed cinnamon, melon pine seed, and some nuts together

**6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

مواضيع الكتاب

**“Perfumes in Ancient Egypt”**

- What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make perfumes?
- What was the most popular perfume in Ancient Egypt?



### Writing



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

#### Salt dough recipe

#### وصفة عجينة الملح

##### 1- Preparation time<sup>(1)</sup>

10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

##### 2- Ingredients<sup>(2)</sup>

1 cup of plain flour<sup>(3)</sup> (about 250g)

½ a cup of salt (about 125 g)

½ a cup of water (about 125 ml)

##### 3- Method<sup>(4)</sup>

- Heat the oven on a low temperature<sup>(5)</sup>.
- Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl<sup>6</sup>. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture<sup>7</sup> until it starts to form<sup>8</sup> a ball.
- Put the ball of dough on a flat surface<sup>9</sup> and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects<sup>10</sup>.
- Put your finished items on a baking tray<sup>11</sup> and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard.
- Leave the items<sup>(12)</sup> to cool, then paint<sup>(13)</sup> them.



(1) وقت الإعداد

(2) المكونات

(3) دقيق سادة

(4) الطريقة

(5) درجة حرارة منخفضة

(6) وعاء

(7) مزيج

(8) يشكل

(9) سطح مستو

(10) أشكال ثلاثية الأبعاد

(11) صينية خبز

(12) أغراض

(13) يدهن



When we write instructions for the steps in a process, we often number them. This shows the reader that they have to do the steps in order to complete the process correctly.

عندما نكتب تعليمات لخطوات في عملية ماء، عادة ما نقوم بترقيمهم. هذا يوضح للقراء أن عليهم القيام بالخطوات بالترتيب ليكملوا العملية بنجاح.

#### الترجمة:

١- وقت التحضير

١٠ دقائق + ٣ ساعات من الطهي

٢- المكونات

كوب واحد من الدقيق العادي (حوالي ٢٥٠ جم)

نصف كوب من الملح، حوالي (١٢٥ جم)

نصف كوب من الماء (حوالي ١٢٥ مل)

٣- الطريقة

١- سخن الفرن على درجة حرارة منخفضة.

٢- اخلط الدقيق والملح في وعاء كبير. أضف القليل من الماء، ثم أكثر قليلاً، وحرك الخليط حتى يبدأ في تشكيل كرة.

٣- صغ كرة العجين على سطح مستو وقم بالعمل بالشكل الذي تريده. يمكنك لفها بشكل مسطح وقطعها إلى أشكال أو أرقام أو حروف أو استخدام العجين لصنع أشكال ثلاثية الأبعاد.

٤- ضع الأغراض النهائية على صينية الخبز واخبزها في الفرن لمدة ٣ ساعات حتى تصبح صلبة.

٥- اترك الأغراض لتبرد ثم ادهنها.



## Project



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



### Egyptian flavors<sup>(1)</sup>!

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking<sup>2</sup> and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations<sup>3</sup> of different spices are a secret<sup>4</sup> ingredient in many recipes. But what else can we make with spices, beside delicious dishes? We can also use them to make perfume, and medicine<sup>5</sup>, and to color cloth. They also make great souvenirs, and are beautifully packaged for tourists visiting spice stores and souks.



- |     |         |
|-----|---------|
| (1) | نكهات   |
| (2) | الطهي   |
| (3) | تركيبات |
| (4) | سر      |
| (5) | دواء    |

### النكهات المصرية!

تشتهر مصر بتوابلها التي تستخدم في الطبخ المنزلي والمطاعم في جميع أنحاء البلد، تعتبر التركيبات الخاصة من التوابل المختلطة مكوناً سرياً في العديد من الوصفات ولكن ماذا يمكننا أن نصنع بالتوابل بجانب الأطباق اللذيذة؟ يمكننا أيضاً أن نستخدمها في العطور والأدوية وتلوين القماش، كما أنها تمثل هدايا تذكارية رائعة، ويتم تعبئتها بشكل جميل للسياح الذين يرون مناخر التوابل والأسواق.





### 1 Listen and complete:

- 1 To make a salt plain dough, you need 1 cup of plain .....
- 2 Heat the oven on a low .....
- 3 ..... the mixture until it starts to form a ball.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 ..... the oven on a low temperature.  
a) Stir                      b) Heat                      c) Put                      d) Cut
- 2 Special combinations of different spices ..... a secret ingredient in many recipes.  
a) is                      b) do                      c) are                      d) was
- 3 We use plain ..... in a salt dough recipe.  
a) flower                      b) floor                      c) flour                      d) four
- 4 Tourists buy ..... when they visit Egypt.  
a) pyramids                      b) souvenirs                      c) cars                      d) houses

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking and restaurants all across the country. Special combinations of different spices are a secret ingredient in many recipes. And we don't only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume, medicine, and to color cloth. Spices are sold in stores, on the streets, and in the souks. Fresh, colorful and beautifully packaged spices are one of the favorite souvenirs that tourists buy when they visit Egypt.

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about .....  
a) Egyptian restaurants                      b) Egyptian stores  
c) Egyptian spices                      d) Egyptian streets
- 2 The underlined word "souvenirs" means .....  
a) gifts                      b) herbs                      c) food                      d) stores

### Answer the following questions:

3 What is Egypt famous for?

4 Write two uses of the Egyptian spices.

### 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 are – used – Spices – cooking – in – home.

2 to make – salt – You – need – dough – 250 g of – flour

3 buy – visit – Tourists – they – when – spices – Egypt.

4 its – famous – Egypt – for – spices – is.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

egypt is famous for its spices

### 6 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:

مخطط  
آخر لكتاب

“Egyptian spices”

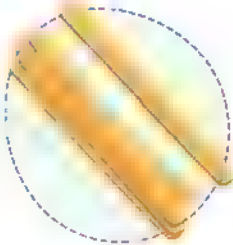
special combination – cooking

# Unit 6

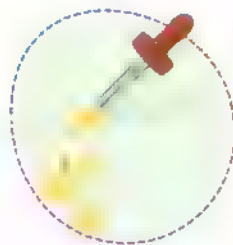
## REVIEW



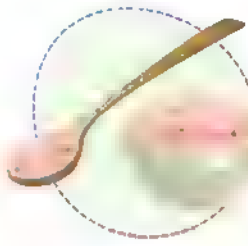
### Vocabulary



popsicle sticks



drops



wax



wick

### Language Focus

#### Asking about quantities

#### 1) Asking and answering about quantities of countable things:

##### Question



A: How many + countable noun + ... ?

How many lemons do we need for a lemonade?

##### Answer

a / an (واحد) ...



B: We need a lemon.



a number رقم (five, twenty, ...) ...

B: We need five lemons.

an approximate amount كمية تقريبية

- some (بعض) ...
- a few (قليل) ...
- a lot of (كثير) ...



B: We need a few lemons.

#### 2) Asking and answering about quantities of uncountable things:

##### Question



A: How much + uncountable noun + ... ?

How much oil do we need?

an approximate amount كمية تقريبية

- some (بعض) ...
- a little (قليل) ...
- a lot of (كثير) ...



B: We need a little oil.

### Writing

#### Salt dough recipe

Preparation time 10 minutes + 3 hours for cooking

Ingredients 1 cup of plain flour (about 250 g)  
1/2 a cup of salt (about 125 g)  
1/2 a cup of water (about 125 ml)

Method

1. Heat the oven on a low temperature.
2. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.
3. Put the ball of dough on a flat surface and work it into the shape you want. You can roll it flat and cut out shapes, numbers, or letters, or use the dough to make 3D objects.
4. Put your finished items on a baking tray and bake in the oven for 3 hours until it is hard.
5. Leave the items to cool, then paint them.

# Unit 6

## CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



### Lesson 1

.....	عصى مصاصة	.....	يسحن
.....	قطرات	.....	يقلب
.....	شمع	.....	تعليمات
.....	يضغط	.....	زيت عطري
.....	يعصر	.....	فتيل
.....	شموع	.....	بتلات زهور

### Lesson 2

.....	احتفالات	.....	شعير
.....	رسومات	.....	أعشاب
.....	قمح	.....	إوز
.....	يحفظ	.....	فيضان

### Lesson 3

.....	عرش	.....	القائمون على الاعتناء بالمكان
.....	تراب	.....	صولجان ( عصا الملك )
.....	شامبو	.....	تاج
.....	فرشاة شعر	.....	صابونة
.....	معجون أسنان	.....	قرقة
.....	عطر	.....	فرشاة أسنان





## How to write instructions for making candles:

- First, we need + (اكتب المكونات التي تحتاجها).
- We need + (الكمية التي نحتاجها من كل مكون)
- Then, + (الخطوة الثانية من عمل الشمع)
- Finally, + (آخر خطوة في عمل الشمع)

Here are the instructions for making candles. First, we need **wax, wicks and perfume oil**. We need **450 grams of wax** to make **three candles**. Then, **heat the wax to melt it and stir it well**. Squeeze about 40 drops of oil on hot wax. Then, **put the wax into shaping glasses**. Put some popsicle sticks to hold the wicks in the glasses. Finally, **let it cool down to get hard**.

## How to write about Ancient Egyptians personal care traditions:

- The Ancient Egyptians loved + (اكتب شيئاً كان يستخدمه المصريون القدماء في العناية الشخصية مثل العطور)
- They used + (شيء كان يتميز به المصريون القدماء في العناية الشخصية)

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong **perfumes**. The most popular perfume was called **Kapet**. They also used **toothbrushes** to clean their teeth. They also made mint candies to keep their mouths fresh all day.

## How to write about quantities in a recipe:

- Use **numbers + units of measurements** like (grams/millimeters) (لتحدث عن الكميات)
- Use **measurement expressions** such as: (a little/some/a few) (لتحدث عن الكميات)
- Use **to + inf...** (للتعبير عن الغرض)

I made pancakes yesterday. I needed **about 250 g of flour**. I needed **one cup of milk** and **a teaspoon of salt**. I added **a few eggs** to the mixture but it was hard. So, I needed **a little more milk**. I heated the pan to **bake the pancakes**. I think I needed **three cups of flour** to **make ten pancakes**. I cooked them on **low temperature**.

### 1 Match the verbs to the pictures:

1 stir

2 squeeze

3 press

4 heat



### 2 Complete the dialog with "How many/ How much":

1 Hani ..... milk do you want in your coffee, Grandma?

Grandma : Just a little milk, thanks Hani.

2 Fareeda ..... students are there in your English class, Dalia?

Dalia : There are about forty, I think.

3 Sherif ..... math problems did you do yesterday?

Karim : Just a few. They were difficult.

4 Rana : I'm going to the market now. .... tomatoes do we need?

Mom : Please get a kilo of tomatoes and some fruit.

### 3 Circle the correct answer:

1 Please hurry. We don't have a lot of / a few time.

2 Can I have a little / a few sugar in my coffee, please?

3 There isn't some / any bread. Can you buy some / a few?

4 How many / much candles does 450 grams of wax make?

5 How many / much cooking oil do I need to put in the pan?



### 1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(need – some – few – lot)

Yesterday, I went to the supermarket to buy vegetables and fruits. I bought ..... potatoes, I bought a watermelon, some tomatoes, and cucumbers. I also bought ten bananas, six apples and three mangoes. I ..... some limes too, so I bought a ..... limes.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 ..... much sugar do you need?  
a) What                      b) Who                      c) How                      d) What
- 2 I have ..... apple and a banana.  
a) an                      b) four                      c) some                      d) little
- 3 We need a ..... oil.  
a) little                      b) a                      c) an                      d) few
- 4 A: How ..... mangoes do they need for the cake? B: They need three mangoes.  
a) much                      b) many                      c) often                      d) do

### 3 Correct the underlined words:

- 1 I need an milk. (.....)
- 2 Who much tea do you need? (.....)
- 3 How many sugar do we need? (.....)
- 4 How much students are there in your school? (.....)



### Listening

#### 1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

- 1 The Ancient Egyptians didn't love perfumes. ( )
- 2 The most popular perfume was called "Kaper". ( )
- 3 "Kaper" was cheap because it had a lot of ingredients. ( )

#### 2 Listen and complete:

- 1 Ahmed will go to the ..... with his mom.
- 2 They need to buy ..... and some fruit.
- 3 They need a ..... lemons.



### Reading

#### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 "....." are plants with strong taste often used in cooking.  
a) Flowers      b) Herbs      c) Fruits      d) Ducks
- 2 A: How ..... popsicle sticks do you need? B I need three.  
a) much      b) many      c) often      d) old
- 3 There isn't ..... oil left in the bottle.  
a) some      b) any      c) few      d) little
- 4 ..... the wax to melt it.  
a) Heat      b) Press      c) Squeeze      d) Cool

#### 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 A "festival" is a special occasion ...
  - 2 I am going to the store, mom.
  - 3 The most popular perfume in Ancient Egypt ...
  - 4 A: How many lemons do we need?

- B**
- a. ( ) was called "Kaper".
  - b. ( ) B We need a few lemons.
  - c. ( ) when people play music and eat nice food.
  - d. ( ) very special places.
  - e. ( ) How many tomatoes do you want?

#### 5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Ancient Egyptians used to be clean. They had special personal care routines. They loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called "Kaper". Cheaper perfumes were



made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream, or they pressed the dry ingredients into a cone shape to make incense. They also keep their mouths fresh all day by making mint candies. They mixed cinnamon, melon, pine seeds, and some nuts together with honey. Then, they cut the mixture into small square candies.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The main idea of the text is about .....  
 a) personal care in the past      b) Egyptian perfumes  
 c) mint      d) some herbs
- 2 Cinnamon and ..... are spices.  
 a) honey      b) nuts      c) pepper      d) candies

**Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What were the ingredients of the cheaper perfumes? .....
- 4 How could Ancient Egyptians keep their mouths fresh all day? .....



**Writing**

**6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

- 1 much – How – does – have – she – juice?  
 .....
- 2 has – in – hand – The king – a long – his – scepter.  
 .....
- 3 has – He – milk – in his – a little – coffee.  
 .....
- 4 had – Sally – a lot – in her – of – books – room.  
 .....

**7 Punctuate the following:**

ancient Egyptians made mint candies  
 .....

**8 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**



**“Salt dough recipe”**  
 plain flour – 3 hours for cooking

.....

.....

.....

.....





## Listening

### 1 Listen and write (True) or (False):

- 1 Sara traveled to London with her family. ( )
- 2 Marco Polo was an Egyptian explorer. ( )
- 3 Marco Polo is one of the first people to travel to China. ( )

### 2 Listen and complete:

- 1 I use 450 grams of .....
- 2 I use 40 drops of perfume .....
- 3 I use popsicle sticks to hold the ..... up in the glasses.



## Reading

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Did Hana ..... her homework?  
a) do                      b) doing                      c) does                      d) did
- 2 Marco Polo is a famous Italian .....  
a) doctor                      b) painter                      c) singer                      d) explorer
- 3 "....." are the people who look after and clean a building.  
a) Kings                      b) Queens                      c) Caretakers                      d) Princes
- 4 A: ..... many apples do you need? B: I need six apples.  
a) When                      b) How                      c) What                      d) Where

### 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A**
- 1 They rode their ...
  - 2 Yesterday, I had an amazing experience.
  - 3 "Barley" is a plant ...
  - 4 A: How much milk do we need?

- B**
- a. ( ) some sugar and honey.
  - b. ( ) B: We need a little milk.
  - c. ( ) I went on a felucca on the Nile.
  - d. ( ) whose seeds we can use to make bread and other things.
  - e. ( ) bikes at the park yesterday.

### 5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Local people in a small village in Nigeria called Nok found some unusual objects under the ground almost 100 years ago. They found beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style. They had large eyes. They were in a sitting position with their hands on their legs.

They also found iron and stone farming tools. These were from an advanced culture from around 500 B.C.E. to 200 C.E. They called the culture the "Nok" civilization.

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

- 1 The village is in .....  
a) Egypt      b) France      c) Nigeria      d) China
- 2 The local people found some unusual ..... under the ground.  
a) objects      b) toys      c) vegetables      d) books

**Answer the following questions:**

- 3 What did the sculptures look like? .....
- 4 What did they call the culture? .....



**Writing**

**6 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:**

- 1 they – How – do – need – sugar – much?  
.....
- 2 aren't – in – tigers – There – any – Egypt.  
.....
- 3 I – bag – found – my – the table – under.  
.....
- 4 lives – a palace – Peter – in – parents – with his.  
.....

**7 Punctuate the following:**

i had such a wonderful experience

.....

**8 Write a paragraph of about 50–60 words using the following guiding elements:**

مجاب منه  
أقر الكتاب

**"Marco Polo"**  
explorer – China

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

## TAPE SCRIPTS



### UNIT 1

#### Practice on Lesson 1

A community garden is a big green space on the roof of an apartment block. The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. They grow vegetables to eat, and sometimes they sell them in the market, too! Roof gardens also help clean the air in the city, so that's good for people's health.

#### Practice on Lesson 2

My sister, Dalia, plays basketball twice a week, on Tuesdays and Thursdays. She has a gymnastics lesson once a week, on Saturdays. She also practices her gymnastics every day after school—she never misses a day! Twice a year, there's a big gymnastics competition in our region in December and June. Dalia always enters! Go Dalia!

#### Practice on Lesson 3

There was a giant who has a big garden. The selfish giant doesn't allow the children to play in his garden. So he builds a wall around his garden. Spring arrives in the village, but in the giant's garden, it is still winter. When the children come back, the leaves on the trees are green again. The giant understands that when you're not selfish, good things happen.

#### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt—the warm, sunny weather, and especially the food! Scottish food is OK, but Egyptian food is better! For example, for breakfast, a lot of Scottish people eat porridge. They usually

make it, with milk, and they sometimes put honey on it, but I really don't like it!

#### Test yourself on Unit 1

1. New York has a lot of green spaces, like the famous High Line. The High Line was a railway line, but in the 1980s, trains stopped using it. Now it's a green space with more than 500 species of plants and trees! It is 2.5 kms long.
- 2.

**Nabila** : Do you want to come to my house?

**Mariam** : Thanks, Nabila, but I always help my aunt on Friday afternoons at the community garden.

**Nabila** : What's that?

**Mariam** : It's a big green space on the roof of my Aunt Salma's apartment block.

**Nabila** : Who works there?

**Mariam** : The people who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood.

### UNIT 2

#### Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Hana. I help new students get to know the school. I take them around the school and show them where their classrooms are, and I help them with the books, too. I really like helping the new students. Sometimes they're nervous and shy.

#### Practice on Lesson 2

I'm Ahmed. I'm a student at El Fouad School. I'm in grade six. The school's buildings are modern and new. I study science in the Ahmed Zewail Building. We have a break in the West Court.



We have Information Technology lessons in the IT Building. We play basketball and handball in the gymnasium.

### Practice on Lesson 3

My favorite story is about a hare, a monkey, an elephant, and a mouse. The mouse was in the hare's house. The mouse scared the hare and the monkey. They asked their friend, the elephant, to help them. The small mouse runs out of the house. The elephant cries and runs away. Everyone laughs at the end.

### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

I'm Ola. I have a pet cat. I think cats make the best pets. They are clean and calm animals. They are very beautiful. They have soft fur which is nice to touch. They are independent animals. You don't need to take them for a walk every day. When I pet my cat, it makes me feel happy.

### Test yourself on Unit 2

1. The 2024 Gymnasium is the yellow building in our new school. We use it for basketball, handball, and gymnastics during Physical Education lessons. There are some teachers who run after school sports clubs here too, like five-a-side football (Mr Afifi, math department) and tennis (Mrs Manal, French department).
2. I'm Amira. I have a pet cat. Cats are my favorite animals. I like cats because they're beautiful, clean, and calm. They have soft fur. Their fur is nice to touch. Cats are independent. I don't need to take my cat for a walk every day. My cat makes me happy.

## October Monthly Test

1. I went to my aunt's house yesterday. I always help her at the community garden. The community garden is a big green space on the roof of her apartment block. Lots of people volunteer to help. We grow vegetables. They eat them and they sometimes sell them in the market.
2. My name is Ola. I help new students get to know the school and their classrooms. I helped a new student yesterday. His name is Ali. He was very nervous and shy. I helped him to stay calm because we're all friendly.

## UNIT 3

### Practice on Lesson 1

**Reem** : Should we visit the Manial Palace Museum on Monday?

**Rana** : That's a great idea!

**Reem** : Let's ride on a rollercoaster on Tuesday.

**Rana** : Okay, cool! We can go quad biking in the desert in Giza.

**Reem** : How can we go there?

**Rana** : We can take the bus.

### Practice on Lesson 2

Study for about 30 minutes, but no longer. If you try to study for hours, you can't concentrate. When you have regular breaks, you remember more. It's also better to study at the same time each day.

### Practice on Lesson 3

Little Deer runs through the forest. He comes to a beautiful, blue lake and he decides to stop for a drink of water. Just then, he sees Wolf. Wolf has a drink from the lake. Little Deer can't drink from the lake because he is afraid of the wolf.

### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Today is Nashwa's birthday. She is at the Carnival with her family. She wants to try a rollercoaster ride. The children's section has nine rides, including the Orient Train. They have tickets for that at 10 o'clock. It is a good way to see all of the park.

### Test yourself on Unit 3

1. Amal wants to visit the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa with her cousin Fatima. Amal comes to Cairo to see famous places. Fatima wants to make her cousin happy, but she has a secret. She is afraid of heights. She doesn't want to disappoint Amal. So, Fatima decides to face her fear and go with her.
2. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting and busy town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do. You can swim in the sea or relax at the beach. You can also visit St. Catherine's monastery or go quad biking in the desert.

## UNIT 4

### Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Mai. We are having a birthday party today for our little sister Rana. My brother Mazen is blowing up the balloons. My father is hanging up the streamers. My sister Eman is sending email invitations to our friends. My aunt Fatma is decorating the birthday cake. I am making the playlist on my phone.

### Practice on Lesson 2

I'm Ali. I'm in grade six. I'm studying hard for my exams at the moment. I'm not spending all my free time studying. I'm going running every morning in the park. I'm cycling on the weekends with my brother. I'm trying to see my

friends a few times a week, too.

### Practice on Lesson 3

Some countries have different birthday food. In China, people like to eat long noodles or peaches on their birthday. Why? Because they think that these can give you a long life. And Chinese people are often older. Why? Because they become one on the day they are born. So if you are 10, a Chinese child is 11!

### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

I'm Sara. I'm in grade six. I like reading. I will attend the Book Day party. I will go with my friends. We will dress up as our favorite characters from our favorite books. There is an amazing prize for the best costume. There are drinks and delicious snacks at the party. The party will be next Thursday.

### Test yourself on Unit 4

1. In the USA and Britain, it is usual to give good friends and family presents on their birthdays even when they are adults. In South Africa, 21 is an important birthday because you become an adult at this age. In Nigeria, the most important birthdays are when someone is one, 10, and 15.

2.

**Sama** : What are you doing, Dalia?

**Dalia** : I'm hanging up the streamers for my sister Noha's birthday.

**Sama** : Can I help you, cousin?

**Dalia** : Sure, can you blow up the balloons, please?

**Sama** : Of course!

**Dalia** : What is Mom doing? Is she helping?

**Sama** : Yes, she is decorating the cake.

### November Monthly Test

1. We're traveling to Cairo next week. On Sunday, we can visit the Manial Palace Museum. On Monday, we can take photos for the school project. On Tuesday, we can go to the theme park and ride on a rollercoaster. On Wednesday, we can go quad biking in the desert in Giza.
2. Birthdays are celebrated all over the world. In Egypt we usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their ages. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get presents, too.

## UNIT 5

### Practice on Lesson 1

Rania has an interesting travel diary. She keeps it because she likes to remember her family's vacation in Croatia last year. They visited Marco Polo Museum. The museum is on an island. It's really an interesting place, and it's all about the travels of Marco Polo.

### Practice on Lesson 2

Local people in Nok village found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles. They were usually in a setting position.

### Practice on Lesson 3

I read a nice story yesterday. It was a page from an 18<sup>th</sup> century writer's diary. He was traveling on a ship. He had a relaxing sleep in his cabin. The next morning, he had breakfast with others, then the ship left the port to a mysterious island.

### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

In the afternoon, we had a delicious lunch on board of the felucca, and there was a man playing traditional Egyptian music on an oud. He played beautifully, and the music was magical, dreamy, and relaxing. What a day! I had such a wonderful experience!

### Test yourself on Unit 5

1. Yesterday, I had an amazing experience. I went on a felucca on the River Nile! A felucca is a traditional Egyptian sailing boat. It's made of wood. A tall man called Kareem was the captain of the boat. He was strong and had the skills to sail the felucca. I had such a wonderful experience!
2. I was sad all day yesterday. The weather was still bad, and there were strong winds. I went for long walks around the ship to pass the time during the day. In the evening, I had nothing to do but read my book by the light of a candle in my tiny cabin.

## UNIT 6

### Practice on Lesson 1

Mom and Laila were making some candles. First, they needed about 450 grams of wax to make three candles. They need about forty drops of perfume oil. Laila had lemon oil. It smelled lovely. They needed three wicks and three glasses. They also needed three popsicle sticks to hold the wicks.



### Practice on Lesson 2

I'm Radwa. I want to make chocolate chip cookies. I need 180 grams of flour and a little salt. I will mix them with butter and 150 grams of sugar. I also need one egg and a few drops of vanilla essence. I love chocolate chip cookies.

### Practice on Lesson 3

Peter lives in a big palace where his parents are the caretakers. The palace is old, and no one lives there now. A lot of the rooms are closed and mysterious, but Peter likes to explore them. They are full of interesting and precious things – old paintings, statues, carpets, and furniture.

### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Here are the instructions for making salt dough. First, you need 1 cup of plain flour,  $\frac{1}{2}$  a cup of salt, and  $\frac{1}{2}$  a cup of water. Heat the oven on a low temperature. Mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Add a little water, then a little more, and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.

### Test yourself on Unit 6

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called "Kaper". It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients. But it also had a few common herbs and spices in it. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream.
2. Mom : Ahmed, will you come to the market with me?  
Ahmed : Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?  
Mom : We need to buy tomatoes and some fruits.

Ahmed : How many tomatoes do we need?

Mom : We need a kilo of tomatoes, a few lemons, and some apples.

Ahmed : OK, Mom.

### December Monthly Test

1. I'm Sara. Last month, I traveled to Croatia with my family. My favorite place that I visited was the Marco Polo Museum. Marco Polo was an Italian explorer. He's one of the first people from the West to visit China. It's very interesting because China is very far away.
2. I can make candles. To make candles, I use 450 grams of wax. I use 40 drops of perfume oil. I also use flowers to press on the top of the candles. I put the melted, hot wax in glasses with wicks. I use popsicle sticks to hold the wicks up in the glasses.



## WRITING ANSWERS



### UNIT 1

#### Practice on Lesson 1

##### “Our community garden”

I help my mother on Sunday at the community garden. It's a big green space on the roof of our apartment block. We grow vegetables to eat. We can grow tomatoes, peppers, onions, lettuce – things people eat all the time. We sell them in the market. Sometimes we also grow fruit trees like lemons and dates. We can grow our own fresh food.

#### Practice on Lesson 2

##### “Mini Forest”

Mini Forest is an organization which plants small areas of trees in the middle of our cities. It always works hard to find the best urban locations for our forests. The organization plants trees that grow naturally in an area and it carefully looks after them until they become a small forest. These green areas help people enjoy nature and help our wildlife.

#### Practice on Lesson 3

##### “The High Line”

The High Line was a railway line in New York. In the 1980s, trains stopped using it. Some local residents decided to make the old railway into a big, long park that everyone could use. People can walk through it. They can see art works, watch a theater performance, or eat delicious food. They can do a yoga class or go running.

#### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

From	: sara@scotlandmail.com
To	: ola@egyptmail.com
Subject	: My new life in Scotland
<p>Hi Ola, How are things with you? I'm finally in Scotland with my family. Our apartment is in the city center. It has a great view over parks. The people here are nice and I have a lot of new friends at school. I like Scotland, but there are lots of things I miss about Egypt. I miss our delicious food and the sunny weather. Please write back soon and tell me all the news from home. Lots of love, Sara</p>	

## Test yourself on Unit 1

### “Daily routine”

I always wake up at 7 o'clock in the morning. I usually have breakfast at 8 o'clock. I go to my office by bus. I sometimes have lunch at my office. I never leave the office late. I often go to the theater after work. I go back home at 4 o'clock. I sometimes read a book then I always go to bed at 8 o'clock.

## UNIT 2

### Practice on Lesson 1

#### “Helping new students at school”

New school students often feel nervous and shy because it's their first day at school. I like to help new students get to know the school. I usually show them around where their classes are. I sometimes stay with them in the break, too. We can share our textbooks with them when they don't have their books yet. My friends are happy when they help new students because we are friendly.

### Practice on Lesson 2

#### “Your school”

I am proud of my school. We have new and modern buildings in our school. There are two laboratories in my school. We study science there. These laboratories have all the equipment which classes need to do experiments. There is a big gymnasium in our school. We use it to play basketball, handball, and gymnastics during Physical Education lessons.

### Practice on Lesson 3

#### “Your favorite story”

“Hare gets scared” is my favorite story. It is about a Hare that is hungry and wants to go to her house to get some carrots to eat. There is somebody in her house who wants to eat her. She is scared. She asks for her friends' help. Monkey and Elephant try to help her. They find out it is just a small mouse in her house!

### Practice on Lessons 4&5

#### “Your favorite pet”

My favorite pet is the cat. I think cats are the best pets. They are beautiful with soft fur which is nice to touch. They are clean and calm animals which are usually friendly. They like people but they are independent, so you don't need to take them for a walk every day. Having a cat at your home makes you happy.

## Test yourself on Unit 2

### "Your school"

I am proud of my school. There are new and modern buildings in my school. There are IT buildings, laboratories and new gymnasium and the West Court. My favorite place is the West Court. We can spend time outside. There is a playground and a playing field. There are also benches to sit on under the trees and a water fountain if we feel thirsty.

## October Monthly Test

From	: nouri@gmail.com
To	: nada@gmail.com
Subject	: My community garden

Hi, Nada  
How are things with you?  
I want to tell you about my community garden. A community garden is a big green space on the roof of apartment blocks. People who work there are all volunteers from the neighborhood. They usually plant vegetables and fruits. They grow their own food. It is fresh and organic. They can sell them in the market, too. It's a great place to meet people and make friends.

## UNIT 3

### Practice on Lesson 1

#### "My summer vacation"

I want to spend my summer vacation in Cairo. There are a lot of things to do and see there. I want to visit the Manial Palace Museum because I can take photos for my school project. I want to go quad biking in the desert. I want to climb the Bab Zuweila minaret and I want to explore the souks, too.

### Practice on Lesson 2

#### "What are your top tips for studying?"

I think we should study for about 30 minutes but no longer. We can have regular breaks to remember and concentrate more. It's also better to study at the same time each day. We shouldn't study when we're hungry. It's helpful if we write down what we want to do each time we study. Then we can check it off after we finish.

### Practice on Lesson 3

#### "Fatima's visit to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa"

Fatima goes with her cousin Amal to the Dome of Abu Al-Hawa. They go there on Tuesday. After a long climb, they reach the top. Fatima is afraid of heights. Her face is white. She is very scared. Amal takes her hand and smiles. She asks her to breathe slowly. Fatima feels calmer. She lifts her head to look at the incredible view.

### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

#### A day at the Carnival

I go to the Carnival on Friday. I go with my family. There is a lot to see and do there. There are amazing rides to try like the rollercoaster, and theaters where we can watch shows and concerts. There are places to eat and stores, too. There are Waterfalls rides and simulation theaters. I can try the Orient Train ride, too.

### Test yourself on Unit 3

#### "A place you would like to visit"

I would like to visit Sharm El-Sheikh with my family. Sharm El-Sheikh is an interesting town in Egypt by the Red Sea. There are lots of things to see and do. I can swim in the sea and relax on the beach. I can go quad biking in the desert. I can visit St Catherine's monastery. I can eat delicious food. I love Sharm El-Sheikh.

## UNIT 4

### Practice on Lesson 1

#### "My sister's birthday"

Today is my sister's birthday. We are having a busy day. My mom is decorating the birthday cake. My cousin Ola is hanging up the streamers. My brother Hani is blowing up the balloons. My aunt is making a nice playlist. I am sending everyone email invitations. We are all happy.

### Practice on Lesson 2

From	: nadia@mail.com
To	: heba@mail.com
Subject	: My exams

Hi Heba,  
How are things?  
I'm studying for my final exams these days. I spend around three hours studying every day. But don't worry, I like to spend some time outdoors, too. I am going running in the morning. I'm also cycling with my dad.  
Write soon to tell me your news,  
Nadia.



### Practice on Lesson 3

#### "Birthday parties in Egypt"

Birthdays are celebrated around the world. In Egypt, we usually make birthday cakes for our children and put candles on them to show their age. We often have parties with a lot of family and friends. The children usually get a present, too.

### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

#### "Book Day Party"

From	: schoolclub@school.com
To	: Mr Amr
Subject	: Book Day Party

Dear Mr Amr,

I am writing to invite you to our book day club this year. We are organizing a special day for the event on Friday September 12 (details below).

Date: Friday, September 12  
Time: 5.00 pm - 9.00 pm  
Location: School Library

Please reply by September 1 to confirm if you can attend.

Yours sincerely,  
Heba Elsayed

### Test yourself on Unit 4

#### "An invitation to my birthday party"

From	: mona@mail.com
To	: Mrs Walaa Hamza
Subject	: My birthday party

Dear Mrs Walaa Hamza

I am writing to invite you to my birthday party. We are organizing a special day for this event on Sunday October 20. Family members and friends will be there.

Date: Sunday, October 20  
Time: 6:00 to 9:00 pm  
Location: Down Town Park

Please reply by October 17 to confirm if you can attend the birthday party.

Yours sincerely,  
Mona

## November Monthly Test

### "A vacation in Cairo"

Yesterday I went to Cairo for a vacation. I went with my family. We saw many interesting places. We were very happy. We took photos at the Manial Palace Museum. We visited Cairo Tower. We climbed the Bab Zuweila minaret. We explored the souks.

## UNIT 5

### Practice on Lesson 1

#### "Marco Polo"

Marco Polo is a famous Italian explorer. He is one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13<sup>th</sup> century and wrote a diary about his experiences. It's called "The Travels of Marco Polo".

### Practice on Lesson 2

#### "Nok Civilization"

Almost 100 years ago, local people in the small village of Nok in Nigeria, a country in West Africa, found some unusual objects under the ground. These objects were beautiful clay sculptures of humans. The sculptures were all in the same style: they had large eyes and complicated hair styles.

### Practice on Lesson 3

#### "Gobi Desert"

The Gobi Desert is a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it is boiling hot, by night, it is freezing cold. Sometimes there is snow. There are many sand dunes. Some of them are about 60 meters tall. The wind makes them move and roll like huge yellow waves. Local people call Gobi Desert "the dry sea".

### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

#### "My trip to Al-Fayoum"

Yesterday, I had an amazing experience. I went on a trip to Al-Fayoum. My friends and I went on a boat trip on Qarun Lake. I met a serious man called Kareem. He was the captain of the boat. We stopped by the waterfall. My friends were fascinated by the waterfall. It was such a peaceful trip.

## Test yourself on Unit 5

#### "A felucca on the River Nile"

My friend Salma had such an amazing experience last weekend. She went on a felucca trip on the River Nile. It went slowly down the river in the warm sunshine. She stopped by the Pyramids of Giza and took many pictures there. At sunset, she had a delicious lunch on board the felucca.

## UNIT 6

### Practice on Lesson 1

#### “Instructions for making candles”

Here are the instructions for making the candles. First, you need some wax. You can use around 450 grams of wax to make 3 candles. You also need some perfume oil. You can use lemon oil. It smells lovely. Squeeze around 40 drops of oil on the wax. You will also need a wick for each candle.

### Practice on Lesson 2

#### “Making chocolate chip cookies”

I’m Lama. I love making chocolate chip cookies. I need 180 grams of flour and a little salt. I’ll mix them with butter and some sugar. I also need one egg and a few drops of vanilla essence.

### Practice on Lesson 3

#### “Perfumes in Ancient Egypt”

The Ancient Egyptians loved strong perfumes. The most popular perfume was called “Kaper”. It was expensive because it had a lot of ingredients, some of which were difficult to find. Cheaper perfumes were made from flowers, herbs, and some types of minerals, then mixed with oil to make a cream.

### Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

#### “Egyptian flavors”

Egypt is famous for its spices that are used in home cooking. Families pass down special combinations of different spices as a secret ingredient in many recipes from generation to generation. We don’t only use spices to cook food, we also use them in perfume and to color cloth.

### Test yourself on Unit 6

#### “Salt dough recipe”

My name is Ali. I want to make salt dough. First, I need about 250g of plain flour, 125g of salt and about 125ml of water. I heat to oven on a low temperature. Then I mix the flour and salt in a large bowl. Then, I add a little water, then a little more and stir the mixture until it starts to form a ball.

### December Monthly Test

#### “Marco Polo”

He was a famous Italian explorer and one of the first people from the West to visit China. He went there in the 13<sup>th</sup> century and wrote a diary about his experiences there. It’s called *The Travels of Marco Polo*. It’s full of amazing things about his adventures on his travels.



# **STUDENT'S BOOK LISTENING SCRIPTS**



## Unit 1 Lesson 2

**Nadine:** What do you usually do on weekends, Gameela?

نادين: ماذا تفعلين عادة في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع، جميلة؟

**Gameela:** I usually spend time with my sisters. We often go shopping in the city center, or we sometimes go to the movie theater. What about you?

جميلة: عادة ما أمضي بعض الوقت مع أخواتي. غالبًا ما نذهب للتسوق في وسط المدينة، أو نذهب أحيانًا إلى مسرح الأقلام. ماذا عنك؟

**Nadine:** I don't very often go into the city. I usually stay at home and help my mom, but I sometimes visit my grandparents with my sister, Injy, and her kids.

نادين: لا أذهب غالبًا إلى المدينة. عادة ما أبقى في المنزل وأساعد أمي، ولكنني أحيانًا أزور جدي وجدتي مع أختي إنجي وأطفالها.

**Gameela:** Where do your grandparents live, Nadine?

جميلة: أين يعيش أجدادك، نادين؟

**Nadine:** They live in the countryside on a farm. It's near a town called Asyut. Do you know it? It's on the river Nile.

نادين: يعيشون في الريف، في مزرعة بالقرب من بلدة تسمى أسيوط. هل تعرفينها؟ إنها على نهر النيل.

**Gameela:** Asyut? That's a long way from here. How often do you see them?

جميلة: أسيوط؟ إنها بعيدة عن هنا. كم مرة تزورينهم؟

**Nadine:** About once a month. My sister can drive so she usually takes me in her car. And we always try to meet up for the holiday at Eid al-Adh too. We usually stay for a week at their house then.

نادين: حوالي مرة في الشهر. أختي يمكنها أن تقود السيارة لذلك هي تأخذني عادة في سيارتها. ونحاول دائمًا الالتقاء بالعطلة في عيد الأضحى أيضًا. عادة ما نبقى لمدة أسبوع في منزلهم.

**Gameela:** I love Eid al-Adh! We always meet up with my mom's family for the holiday. They are all great cooks and we always eat a lot!

جميلة: أحب عيد الأضحى! دائمًا ما نلتقي بعائلة أمي في العطلة. كلهم طهاة رائعون ونأكل دائمًا الكثير.

**Nadine:** That sounds great!

نادين: هذا يبدو رائعًا!

**Gameela:** What about this weekend, Nadine? Are you busy?

جميلة: ماذا عن عطلة نهاية الأسبوع هذه، نادين؟ هل أنت مشغولة؟

**Nadine:** Not really. Do you want to do something together?

نادين: ليس بالضبط. هل تريدين أن نفعل شيئًا معًا؟

**Gameela:** Yes, let's go to that new café in our neighborhood. It's near the square.

جميلة: نعم، لنذهب إلى هذا المقهى الجديد في حيننا، إنه بالقرب من الميدان.

**Nadine:** Yes, okay. It looks nice and they have delicious date and honey cakes! Saturday afternoon?

نادين: نعم، حسًا. يبدو لطيفًا ولديهم كعكات بلح وعسل لذيذة! بعد ظهر يوم السبت؟

**Gameela:** Yes, that sounds great. I'll text you.

جميلة: نعم، يبدو ذلك رائعًا. سأرسل لك رسالة.



### Unit 3 Lesson 2

**Samer:** Dad, here's the information I found online about quad biking in the desert.

سامر: أبي، إليك المعلومات التي وجدتتها عبر الإنترنت حول ركوب الدراجات الرباعية في الصحراء.

**Dad:** Oh, thanks Samer. Show me.

الأب: أوه، شكرًا سامر، أرى.

**Samer:** The company is called Desert Adventures. When you look at their website, the information is here. Look. The tour guide will meet us at the hotel.

سامر: تسمى الشركة «مغامرات الصحراء». عندما تنظر إلى موقعهم الإلكتروني، فإن المعلومات موجودة هنا. انظر. سيجتمع المرشد السياحي معنا في الفندق.

**Dad:** OK. What time will he meet us?

الأب: حسنًا، ما هو الوقت الذي سيجتمع به معنا؟

**Samer:** He'll meet us at 9 am and he'll drive us into the desert.

سامر: سوف يلتقي بنا في التاسعة صباحًا وسيقودنا إلى الصحراء.

**Dad:** And what time do we get back?

الأب: وما هو الوقت الذي نعود فيه؟

**Samer:** We should be back around 2 pm. Lunch is included in the price. Should we take some water?

سامر: يجب أن نعود حوالي الساعة ٢ مساءً. السعر يشمل وجبة الغداء. هل يجب أن نأخذ بعض الماء؟

**Dad:** Yes. Good idea. How big is the group?

الأب: نعم. فكرة جيدة. كم عدد المجموعة؟

**Samer:** It'll be a group of six.

سامر: ستكون مجموعة من ستة أفراد.

**Dad:** I like the photos. Everyone is wearing helmets. That's good. You have to wear a helmet if you ride a quad bike. How long do we ride the quad bikes for?

الأب: أحب الصور. الجميع يرتدون الخوذات، هذا جيد. عليك ارتداء خوذة إذا كنت تتركب دراجة رباعية. كم من الوقت نركب الدراجات الرباعية؟

**Samer:** One of the trips is 45 minutes, but there's also a trip for an hour. Can we do the hour tour, Dad?

سامر: زمن الرحلة الواحدة ٤٥ دقيقة، ولكن هناك أيضًا رحلة لمدة ساعة. هل يمكننا القيام بجولة لمدة ساعة يا أبي؟

**Dad:** Yes, of course. This is going to be a lot of fun. Remember to listen to the guide's instructions so that you stay safe.

الأب: نعم، بالطبع. سيكون ذلك ممتعًا للغاية. تذكر أن تستمع إلى تعليمات المرشد حتى تحافظ على سلامتك.

**Samer:** Yes, I will Dad.

سامر: نعم، سأفعل يا أبي.

**Dad:** Good! How do we book the tour if we can't book it on the website?

الأب: جيدًا كيف نحجز الجولة إذا لم نتمكن من حجزها على الموقع الإلكتروني؟

**Samer:** We can book it at the office in town. If we book the tour today, it's cheaper. We get a 10% discount.

سامر: يمكننا حجزها في المكتب في المدينة. إذا قمنا بحجز الجولة اليوم، فهذا أرخص. نحصل على خصم ١٠٪.

**Dad:** Great. Can you pass me my wallet? I need my credit card to pay for the tickets. Let's go to the office now

الأب: رائع. هل يمكنك أن تمرر لي محفظتي؟ أحتاج إلى بطاقة الائتمان الخاصة بي لدفع ثمن التذاكر. لنذهب الآن إلى المكتب.

**Samer:** Sure Dad. Here you are.

سامر: نعم يا أبي. تقبل.

## Unit 3 Lesson 2

**Hana:** Hi. My name's Hana. I get up every day at 6 o'clock. I have breakfast with my family at 6.30 in the morning. I go to the library on Saturday and I play sports on Sunday. I do homework on Tuesday.

هانا: مرحبًا، اسمي هانا. أستيقظ كل يوم عند الساعة السادسة. أتناول وجبة إفطار مع عائلتي في الساعة ٦:٣٠ صباحًا، أذهب إلى المكتبة يوم السبت وأمارس الرياضة يوم الأحد، أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية يوم الثلاثاء.

**Youssef:** Hi. I'm Youssef. I get up every day at 7 o'clock. I have breakfast with my grandparents at 7.30 in the morning. I don't go to the library but I play sports on Saturday. I do homework on Thursday.

يوسف: مرحبًا، أنا يوسف. أستيقظ كل يوم في الساعة السابعة. أتناول وجبة إفطار مع جدتي في الساعة السابعة والنصف صباحًا، لا أذهب إلى المكتبة ولكنني أعب الرياضة يوم السبت، أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية يوم الخميس.

**Maggie:** Hello. My name's Maggie. I get up every day at 6.30 and I have breakfast with my family at 7 o'clock. I go to the library on Sunday in the afternoon. I don't play sports. I do homework on Monday and Wednesday.

ماجى: مرحبًا، اسمي ماجى. أستيقظ كل يوم في الساعة ٦:٣٠ وأتناول الإفطار مع عائلتي عند الساعة السابعة. أذهب إلى المكتبة يوم الأحد بعد الظهر. لا أمارس الرياضة. أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية يومي الإثنين والأربعاء.

**Nader:** Hi. I'm Nader. I get up every day at 8 o'clock. I have breakfast with my sister at 8.15, then we go to school. I don't go to the library because I have a lot of books at home. I play sports on Wednesday. I do homework every day.

نادر: مرحبًا، أنا نادر. أستيقظ كل يوم في الساعة ٨. أتناول وجبة إفطار مع أختي في ٨:١٥، ثم نذهب إلى المدرسة. لا أذهب إلى المكتبة لأن لدي الكثير من الكتب في المنزل. أمارس الرياضة يوم الأربعاء. أقوم بالواجبات المنزلية كل يوم.



Marco Polo was twenty-one when, in 1275, he went into the Gobi Desert for the first time. He was fascinated by the sand dunes, which moved with each step the camels made. Some of the dunes were sixty meters tall and twenty meters long, and their shapes were always changing. The wind made them move and roll like huge yellow waves. In fact, the local people called the Gobi Desert 'the dry sea' in their language. The dromedaries in the caravan moved slowly up and down the dunes, swaying like big ships over the ocean. They went toward Lop Nur, the last village before the empty wasteland of the desert. Marco knew that after this place, there was nothing for thousands of kilometers – no people, no plants, no water.

It was a mysterious and dangerous place. By day, it was boiling hot, by night, it was freezing cold—sometimes there was snow. They went on silently, but often the wind made strange noises, like voices singing and drums playing far away. There were many strange legends about this desert. People said that travelers who were lost long ago in the desert wandered there still...

Before they left Lop Nur, Marco made sure they had enough food and water for the men and the animals to last for one month. After exactly thirty days of traveling across that frightening, empty land, they finally saw the green line of Noah Oasis on the horizon. They had no water and no food left and the animals were exhausted, but their desert adventure was over. They were in China!

كان ماركو بولو في الواحدة والعشرين عندما دخل في صحراء غوبي لأول مرة في عام ١٢٧٥. كان مفتونًا بالكتبان الرملية التي تحركت مع كل خطوة قامت بها الجمال. وكان طول بعض الكتبان الرملية ستين مترًا وطول بعضها ٢٠ مترًا، وكانت أشكالها تتغير دائمًا. الرياح جعلتها تتحرك وتتدحرج مثل الأمواج الصفراء الضخمة. في الواقع، أطلق السكان المحليون اسم «البحر الجاف» على صحراء غوبي بلغتهم. تحركت الجمال في القافلة ببطء إلى أعلى وأسفل الكتبان الرملية، متمائلة مثل السفن الكبيرة فوق المحيط. ذهبت نحو «لوب نور»، القرية الأخيرة قبل أرض الصحراء الفارغة، عرف ماركو أنه بعد هذا المكان لم يكن هناك شيء لآلاف الكيلومترات - لا أشخاص ولا نباتات ولا ماء.

كان مكانًا غامضًا وخطيرًا. في النهار، كان يعلو ساخنًا، ليلاً، كان باردًا - في بعض الأحيان كان هناك ثلج. ذهبوا بصمت، ولكن في كثير من الأحيان كانت الرياح تصدر أصواتًا غريبة، مثل أصوات القنا والطيول التي تعزف بعيدًا. كانت هناك العديد من الأساطير الغريبة حول هذه الصحراء. قال الناس إن المسافرين الذين فقدوا منذ فترة طويلة في الصحراء كانوا يتجولون ...

قبل أن يغادروا «لوب نور»، تأكد ماركو من أن لديهم ما يكفي من الطعام والماء للرجال والحيوانات ليدوم لمدة شهر. بعد ثلاثين يومًا بالضغط من السفر عبر هذه الأرض الفارغة والمخيفة، رأوا أخيرًا الخط الأخضر لواحة «نوح» في الأفق. لم يكن لديهم ماء ولا بقايا طعام والحيوانات مرهقة، ولكن مغامرتهم في الصحراء قد انتهت. كانوا في الصين!

رقم الإيداع: 15384 / 2023

